



---

---

# FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

U.S. Department of State

---

---

## Lao Basic Course



### *Volume 1*

**School of Language Studies**

East Asian & Pacific Languages

Lao Section

August 2014

# About FSI

Established in 1947, the Foreign Service Institute is the United States Government's primary training institution for employees of the U.S. foreign affairs community, preparing American diplomats and other professionals to advance U.S. foreign affairs interests overseas and in Washington. FSI provides more than 600 courses—to include training in some 70 foreign languages, as well as in leadership, management, professional tradecraft, area studies, and applied information technology skills—to some 100,000 students a year, drawn from the Department of State and more than 40 other government agencies and military service branches. FSI provides support to all U.S. Government employees involved in foreign affairs, from State Department entry-level Foreign and Civil Service employees to newly-assigned Ambassadors, and to our Foreign Service National colleagues who assist U.S. efforts at some 270 posts abroad.

# Table of Contents

---

## PREFACE

## INTRODUCTION

## GREETING CYCLE

*“How are you? I’m fine.”* ..... 1

ບໍ່ a question word

## CYCLE 1

*“What’s this? It’s a book?”* ..... 5

ແມ່ນ as a copula verb

## CYCLE 2

*“Whose book is this? This is your pen.”* ..... 9

Personal Pronouns

## CYCLE 3

*“Is this a book? Yes, it is.”* ..... 15

ແມ່ນແລ້ວ as a confirmatory response

## CYCLE 4

*“Where are you going? I’m going to the market.”* ..... 19

ໃສ as a locative question word

## CYCLE 5

*“He’s going to school, isn’t he? No, he isn’t. He’s going to the bank.”* ..... 24

ບໍ່ແມ່ນ Negative responses to questions

## CYCLE 6

*“What’s your name? My name is ...”* ..... 28

ຫຍັງ Position of “what?” in the sentence

## CYCLE 7

*“Is she pretty? Yes, she is.”* ..... 32

**CYCLE 8**

*“Is he a polite person? Yes, he is.”* ..... 35

Stative verbs as noun modifiers

**CYCLE 9**

*“Are you an American? Yes, I am.”* ..... 41

ເປັນ as a special copula verb

**CYCLE 10**

*“What country do you come from? I come from Laos.”* ..... 45

ໃດ as a question word

**CYCLE 11**

*“Where is Sedone province? It’s in Laos.”* ..... 49

ຢູ່ as a verb of location

**CYCLE 12**

*“What are you doing? I’m writing a letter.”* ..... 53

Transitive verbs

**CYCLE 13**

*“Where are we going to eat? Here? No, let’s go eat there.”* ..... 57

ເທົາ as a hortatory particle

**CYCLE 14**

*“Where did he have his hair cut? At the barbershop.”* ..... 60

Locatives with verbs of activity

**CYCLE 15**

*“Where is he going to send the cable? At the post office.”* ..... 64

ສິ as future time particle

**CYCLE 16**

*“Is he coming here? No. He’s going over there.”* ..... 69

ນີ້ as adverbs of place

**CYCLE 17**

*“Do you know the way to ...? Yes. Go straight ahead, then ...”* ..... 71

ຮູ້ທາງ as directions, ຮູ້ຈັກ “to know a fact”

**CYCLE 18**

*“Do you know (my younger sister)? Yes, I met (here) at ...”* ..... 75

ຮູ້ຈັກ “to know a person”

Terms for siblings

**CYCLE 19**

*“What part of Lao do you come from? I come from the (central) part.”* ..... 81

ຈາກໃສ and ມາຈາກ as verbs of direction of motion

**CYCLE 20**

*“Where are you going to put it? Over there? Yes, I’m going to put it over there.”* ..... 85

ເອົາ ໄປ-ມາ as a copula verb

**CYCLE 21**

*“Where? In this box here? (No) In that bag there.”* ..... 89

Determiners versus adverbs of place

**CYCLE 22**

*“Are you going to change the tire (that is) over here? ..... 93*

*(No) I’m going to change the tire (that is) over there.”*

**CYCLE 23**

*“Is he going to read this book over there? No, he’s going to read it over there.”* ..... 97

ຢູ່ພື້ນ Non-optional in Locative

**CYCLE 24**

*“How much is one and one? One and one is two.”* ..... 106

ເທົ່າໃດ Cardinal numbers and “how much, many?”

**CYCLE 25**

*“What day (of the week) is today? Today is (Sunday).”* ..... 110

Names of the days of the week.

**CYCLE 26**

*“What month is it? It’s (January).”* ..... 114

Names of the months

**CYCLE 27**

*“What’s the time today? It’s (march 23<sup>rd</sup>, 1970)” ..... 119*

Complete dates (day, month, year)

**CYCLE 28**

*“What are you going to do (today)? (Today), I’m going sightseeing.” ..... 123*

Certain time expression

**CYCLE 29**

*“What time is it? It’s (eleven thirty).” ..... 131*

ຈັກໂມງ as o’clock, hour

**CYCLE 30**

*“What time do you (got to school)? At 9:00 a.m.” ..... 134*

ຈັກໂມງ as divisions of the day

**CYCLE 31**

*“How long will you (practice)? One hour.” ..... 140*

ດົນປານໃດ how long?”

**CYCLE 32**

*“Do you have enough time to ...? No, I don’t. Yes, I do.” ..... 146*

ມີເວລາ as time for doing something

**CYCLE 33**

*“How will you go? By bus.” ..... 153*

ແນວໃດ, ຈັ່ງໃດ used as types of conveyances

**CYCLE 34**

*“Who will come with you? My friend.” ..... 156*

ໄປ-ມາ ນຳ used as accompaniment and other uses

**CYCLE 35**

*“How will you go? I will walk.” ..... 160*

ໄປ-ມາ with verbs of locomotion

**CYCLE 36**

*“Will you be able to work? Yes.” ..... 166*

ໄດ້ບໍ່ to indicate possibility

**CYCLE 37**

*“Do you know how to drive? No, I don’t.”* ..... 169

ເປັນບໍ to indicate acquired ability

**CYCLE 38**

*“Can she type? No, because she doesn’t know how.”* ..... 172

ເປັນ contrasted with ບໍເປັນ in usage

**CYCLE 39**

*“How many books do you see? Two.”* ..... 176

Numbers with unit classifiers

**CYCLE 40**

*“How much did this briefcase cost? 500 kips.”* ..... 179

ລາຄາ (price) and ເທົ່າໃດ (How much for an item?)

**CYCLE 41**

*“Did you go anywhere? No, I didn’t go anywhere.”* ..... 188

ໄປໃສ as indefinite nouns in negative sentences and in questions

**CYCLE 42**

*“Why does everybody want to meet her? Because she’s pretty.”* ..... 195

ໃຜໆ as inclusive indefinite noun

---


## P R E F A C E

*FSI Lao Basic Course, Volume I, provides introductory material in modern spoken Lao for the student who wishes to achieve proficiency in the language spoken by about three million persons in Laos and an additional ten million persons in Thailand. The Vientiane dialect, used in official government communications and generally the most useful for American students, is the dialect represented here.*

*The initial volume of this course is the product of collaboration between Warren G. Yates, chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages and Souksomboun Sayasithsena, Lao language instructor. Dr. Yates has provided the general plan for the work and the English language content. Mr. Sayasithsena has been responsible for the authenticity of the Lao language material. Assisting in the classroom trial of most of the material in this volume were Malichanh Svengsouk, Kongkam Thanasack, Doungeo Sayasithsena, and Somsangouane Thanasack. Mrs. Svengsouk also provided assistance in proof reading. Irma C. Ponce did the final typing.*

*Unlike most FSI language textbooks, this volume is not accompanied by tape recordings. Lao Basic Course, Volume I, follows the "microwave" format and is not so much a set of materials to be mastered as a set of guidelines for conversational interplay between students and their native-speaking Lao instructor. The format, which owes much to the work of another FSI linguist, Dr. Earl W. Stevick, does not lend itself readily to presentation on magnetic tapes.*

*FSI is indebted to Warren Ziegler and Marcelle Carlier of the Agency for International Development for early encouragement and financial support for the development of Lao teaching material. FSI also gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education in the development and publication of this volume.*

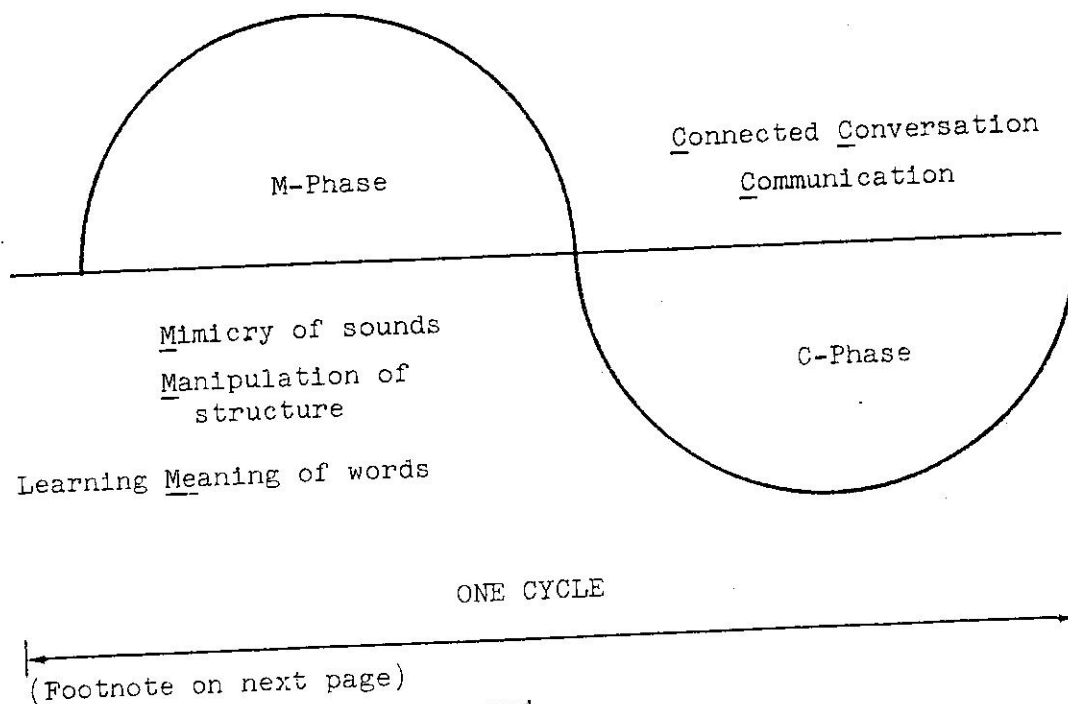
  
James R. Frith, Dean  
School of Language Studies  
Foreign Service Institute



INTRODUCTION

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Lao to English speakers. Some dialect of Lao is spoken and understood by approximately three million persons in Laos and about ten million in Thailand. The Lao presented in this book is the Vientiane dialect, which is used in all governmental communications. It is spoken in the central part of Laos by approximately 2,000,000 persons and is understood throughout the Kingdom of Laos and in Northeast Thailand.

The material in this text is in the form of a series of 85 'cycles' in the 'microwave' format originated by Dr. Earl W. Stevick of the PSI, and first used in two 'modules' of a course in Swahili.<sup>1</sup> The description of the microwave format that follows is based on these two texts. Each 'unit' of a microwave course is called a cycle and consists of two 'phases'. In the first phase (M-phase) the student learns a small amount of the language and in the second phase (C-phase) he puts it to use. The diagram below illustrates this:



The term 'microwave' (a very short wave) emphasizes the short span of time between the presentation of new material and its actual use in real communication.

The teaching methods<sup>2</sup> used with the M-phase and C-phase may vary a great deal and the teacher should feel free to use the one that seems most effective to him. The sentences in the M-phase are provided with cue words and they may be done like substitution drills, but other types of drill such as mimicry drills, transformation drills, translation drills, etc., should also be used whenever they seem appropriate.

In the C-phase the instructor should exert himself to the fullest extent possible to make everything that is said in class be 'real communication'. Communication can occur only if this condition is met: One person is giving information that another person doesn't have but is interested in having. The C-phase will normally consist of questions and answers, which may be joined together to form short conversational exchanges. In the beginning this will be the limit of the student's capacity. Later on short narrations will be possible and normal. If the students are going to be interested in what is being said it follows that they may wish to have some control over what is being talked about. The instructor should encourage this. This may mean any of several things, depending on the nature of the class and their spirit of independence, etc. It may mean only that the instructor supplies new vocabulary items

---

<sup>1</sup> Swahili: An Active Introduction, General Conversation and Swahili: An Active Introduction, Geography ed. by Earl W. Stevick, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C., 1966

<sup>2</sup> More explicit and detailed suggestions for teaching microwaves are included in Notes to Teachers at the end of the Introduction. Specific advice for full exploitation of the material in each cycle is given in each cycle. All of these suggestions are given in the Lao language for the benefit of Lao teachers who may not understand English very well.

to be used in patterns already learned or it may mean that additional grammatical patterns and vocabulary items may have to be taught. In either case the instructor should allow the student to have a major voice in what is taught. The instructor should be thoroughly familiar with the materials contained in this text so that he may readily skip about when the student's interest leads him to do so. Each cycle forms an independent unit so that taking the cycles out of sequence will not cause any problems that can not be easily dealt with. This text should be looked upon as an aid to teaching and not as a complete course of instruction.

It will normally require from 250 to 300 hours in class to complete this text. A student who has done well in this part of the course should be able to perform all of the following things: order a simple meal, ask for a room in a hotel, ask and give street directions, tell time, handle travel requirements and expressions of politeness plus some of the following: introduce people to each other, discuss his work, give autobiographical information, and discuss current events.

#### Notes To Students

- 1) Listen carefully and imitate as closely as you can what the instructor says. Be prepared to try to improve what you say if the instructor doesn't approve of it. Keep in mind that in the beginning of language study you will probably have rather poor ability to monitor your own efforts. The closer your sounds resemble English the farther they will be from Lao.
- 2) You should always know the meaning of anything you say without trying to put a literal word-for-word English translation on it. For example, s<sup>h</sup>ya kh<sup>h</sup>ôj s<sup>h</sup>i f<sup>h</sup>aa means 'My shirt is blue' but a word-by-word translation of this would be 'shirt I color sky.' All you need to know is what a Lao would say if he wanted to tell you that his shirt was blue.
- 3) The material presented to you in each cycle is very limited both in content and grammatical form. You will not find it difficult to learn the meanings, to pronounce the sentences, or to understand the

grammatical structure presented, but you should keep in mind that you will not only be expected to do the things referred to above, but you will be expected to know how to use these sentences in 'communicative' situations, i.e. situations in which you are telling someone else something he doesn't know, but needs or wants to know.

- 4) The 'Notes' that accompany each cycle contain information of several different kinds: (a) description of the grammatical structure in the cycle, (b) information about the meanings and uses of words, and (c) descriptions of situations in which words are used. This information should help you understand better what is being taught in the cycle. You should study it outside of class after you have learned to use the material in the cycle.
- 5) The 'Application' should be done after completion of all other parts of the cycle. It provides an opportunity for you to test your knowledge of different aspects of the cycle such as grammatical structure, vocabulary, etc.
- 6) The Lao use a writing system which is historically related to that used for Sanskrit. At a later stage in the course you will be asked to learn to read it, but it would impose an undue hardship on you in the beginning to have to learn it, so a special transcription has been devised. It is, however, provided only as an aid to memory. You will learn correct pronunciation by imitating your teacher, being corrected, and trying again, but not by reading. Although all the symbols used in the special transcription are explained in the chart that follows, it will be helpful to keep the following conventions in mind: (a) Vowel length is indicated by doubling the vowel symbol, and (b) The pitch contour on a syllable is indicated by a symbol above the vowel.

EXPLANATION OF THE SPECIAL TRANSCRIPTION  
USED IN THIS TEXT







<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Usual English Letter</u>	<u>Approximate Pronunciation</u>
b	b	similar to English <u>b</u> in <u>buy</u>
p	p (after s)	like the <u>p</u> in <u>spy</u> (no puff of air after it)
ph	p	like <u>p</u> in <u>pie</u>
d	d	similar to English <u>d</u>
t	t (after s)	like the <u>t</u> in <u>sty</u> (no puff of air after it)
th	t	<u>t</u> as in <u>tie</u>
k	k (after s)	like the <u>k</u> in <u>ski</u> (no puff of air after it)
kh	k	<u>k</u> as in <u>kite</u>
c	...	somewhat like <u>j</u> in <u>jet</u>
l	l	<u>l</u> as in <u>long</u>
m	m	<u>m</u> as in <u>me</u>
h	h	<u>h</u> as in <u>hen</u>
f	f	<u>f</u> as in <u>fun</u>
s	s	<u>s</u> as in <u>see</u>
n	n	<u>n</u> as in <u>need</u>
ŋ	-ng	like <u>-ng</u> in <u>sing</u>
ŋj	-ny	as in <u>canyon</u>
w	v	as in <u>vet</u>
j	y	as in <u>yet</u>
i	i	<u>i</u> as in <u>sip</u>
ii	ee	<u>ee</u> as in <u>see</u>

LAO BASIC COURSE

e	e	<u>e</u> as in <u>pet</u>
ee	ay	<u>a</u> as in <u>date</u>
ɛ	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>cat</u>
ɛɛ	a	<u>a</u> as in <u>fan</u>
y	u	somewhat like <u>u</u> in <u>sugar</u>
yy	...	nothing like it in English
ə	uh	like <u>a</u> in <u>Cuba</u>
əə	...	similar to British pronunciation of <u>sir</u>
a	u	somewhat like <u>u</u> in <u>fun</u>
aa	ah	<u>a</u> as in <u>father</u>
u	oo	<u>oo</u> as in <u>look</u>
uu	ou	like <u>oo</u> in <u>boot</u>
o	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>cone</u> but shorter
oo	o	<u>o</u> as in <u>so</u>
o	...	.....
oo	aw	<u>aw</u> as in <u>law</u>
la, ua, iw, ew, eew, ew, uj, ooj, ya, yaj, and uaj		have no counterparts in English
aw	ow	<u>ow</u> as in <u>cow</u>
aaw	ow	like <u>ow</u> above but longer
aj	y	<u>y</u> as in <u>my</u>
aaaj	y	like <u>y</u> in <u>my</u> but longer
oj	oy	<u>oy</u> as in <u>boy</u>
ooj	oy	like <u>oy</u> as in <u>boy</u> but longer

TONES IN LAO

There are six tones in Lao. The pitch contours, names, and symbols for them are illustrated below:

	khaa	khāā	khàa	khǎa	kháaw	khâw
Pitch						
Contour						
Names	LOW	MID	HIGH FALLING	LOW RISING	HIGH	LOW FALLING
Symbol	NO MARK	—	↘	∨	↗	∧

ບົດແນະນຳສຳລັບນາຍຄູ (Notes to the Teacher)

ບົດຮຽນພາສາລາວແຕ່ລະບົດຢູ່ໃນປື້ມຕົວນີ້ປະກອບດ້ວຍສອງພາກດ້ວຍກັນຄື ພາກ M ແລະພາກ C ຈຶ່ງແຕ່ລະພາກອາດຈະປະກອບດ້ວຍຫລາຍໆຕອນ. ຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຕາມຫົວໜ້າຕອນນີ້ຈະສອນການຖາມ ແລະອີກຕອນນຶ່ງຈະສອນການຕອບຄຳຖາມ ຈຶ່ງໃນພາກນີ້ອາດຈະມີດ້ວຍກັນຫລາຍຕອນ. ສ່ວນພາກ C ກໍ່ ແມ່ນການຝຶກຫັດສິ່ງທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຄືນໂດຍນັກຮຽນເອງ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່າ ນັກຮຽນຈະຖືກ ປ່ອຍໃຫ້ຖາມກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການຄວບຄຸມຂອງນາຍຄູ.

ເມື່ອເວລາສອນພາກ M ແຕ່ລະຕອນທ່ານຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປີດປື້ມໄວ້ກໍ່ໄດ້ແລະຈຶ່ງແບ່ງການສອນຂອງ ທ່ານອອກດັ່ງນີ້: (1) ເວົ້າແຕ່ລະປາຍໃນໂຕນັກຮຽນຟັງດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວທັນມະດາ. (2) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນ ເວົ້າຄຳສັບທີ່ມີເສັ້ນອິດກ້ອງຕາມທ່ານໃຫ້ລຽນແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຄວາມຫມາຍຂອງມັນ. (3) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າປາຍໂດຍຕາມທ່ານຈົນລຽນ ແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງ. ຖ້າວ່າປາຍໂດຍທີ່ສອນຫາກຍາວເກີນໄປ ກໍ່ຈຶ່ງແບ່ງສອນເອົາລະນອຍດ້ວຍການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນແຕ່ຫາຍປາຍໂດຍກັນໄປ.

ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງເຄິ່ງຄັດຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນ ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍ່ຈຶ່ງພາຍາມຊ່ອຍ ແກ້ໄຂໃຫ້ມັນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍ່ຈຶ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຫັນວ່າລາວເວົ້າຫຍັງຜິດໂດຍການເວົ້າຕາມສຽງທີ່ ຜິດຂອງລາວໃຫ້ລາວຟັງກ່ອນ ແຕ່ຢ່າໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າສຽງທີ່ຜິດຕາມ; ໃຫ້ລາວມີຄຳສັບກ່ອນ. ຕໍ່ໄປກໍ່ຫຼຸດ ສຽງທີ່ຜິດກັບການອອກສຽງທີ່ຖືກໃຫ້ລາວຟັງຈົນລາວຮູ້ແລະໄດ້ຍິນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນ ແລ້ວຈຶ່ງໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າ ຕາມສຽງທີ່ຖືກຈົນເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈຂອງທ່ານ.

ພາກ C ແມ່ນສຳລັບໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຈສິ່ງທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນມາໃນພາກ M . ຈຶ່ງແຕ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ ນຶ່ງເປັນ A ແລະຜູ້ນຶ່ງເປັນ B ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າສິນທະນາກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳຂອງນາຍຄູ. ເຫດທີ່ແຕ່ລະ ຕອນຂອງພາກ C ນັ້ນສິນ ຫລືເປັນພຽງແຕ່ຕົວຢ່າງເທົ່ານັ້ນກໍ່ຍ້ອນວ່າ ຢ່າກປ່ອຍໂອກາດໃຫ້ນາຍຄູຫຳ ການຝຶກຫັດນັກຮຽນໂດຍບໍ່ມີຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່ານາຍຄູຈະເລືອກໃຈຄຳສັບຄຳໃດຈາກບົດ ຮຽນກ່ອນໆທີ່ນັກຮຽນໆມາແລ້ວມາໃຈຢືນກັນກໍ່ໄດ້ຫຼັງນັ້ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ມັນຈຶ່ງເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງທີ່ນາຍຄູ ຈະຕ້ອງເຂົ້າໃຈໃນຈຸດປະສົງອັນນີ້.

ຫລັງຈາກການສອນພາກ C ຢ່າງພໍອີກພໍໃຈແລ້ວ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານເຫັນວ່າມີເຮືອງທີ່ພໍຈະສິນທະນາ ກັນໄດ້ກໍ່ໃຫ້ສິນທະນາກັນໂລດ. ແຕ່ໃນຕອນຕົ້ນໆນັ້ນຈຶ່ງພາກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດເວົ້າຫລາຍໆເຮືອງກ່ອນ ຕໍ່ໄປຈຶ່ງ



## APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ cằw bồ? (Is she taller than you?)
- (b) hýan cằw \_\_\_\_\_ hýan láaw (Your house is as pretty as his.)
- (c) láaw njāaη \_\_\_\_\_ cằw (He walks faster than you do.)
- (d) lỳaη nìi \_\_\_\_\_ lỳaη nàn (This story is more interesting than that one.)
- (e) láaw pen khón \_\_\_\_\_ cằw (He's as intelligent a person as you are.)
- (f) láaw kháp lốt \_\_\_\_\_ phýan cằw (He drives faster than your friend.)
- (g) phǎj phǎj kồồ bồồ \_\_\_\_\_ láaw (Nobody is as evil (bad as he is).)
- (h) pỳm hủa nìi \_\_\_\_\_ hủa nàn (This book is as cheap as that one.)
- (i) mầak-mầaη nầaj nìi \_\_\_\_\_ nầaj nàn (This mango is as big as that one.)
- (j) mớoη nầaj nìi \_\_\_\_\_ nầaj nàn (This watch is more expensive than that one.)
- (k) hầa-síp làn kíp \_\_\_\_\_ (50,000,000 kip. That's very expensive.)
- (l) mỳy nìi láaw khǎaj \_\_\_\_\_ mỳy wáan nìi (He is selling it cheaper today than yesterday.)
- (m) \_\_\_\_\_ nàn (It's much more delicious than that.)

**Answers:** 1 (a) sủuη kwāa, (b) náam thāw kan káp, (c) wáj kwāa, (d) nầa sỏn-caj kwāa, (e) sá-lầat thāw kan káp, (f) wáj kwāa, (g) sầa thồồ, (h) thỳyk thāw kan káp, (i) njāj thồồ kan káp, (j) phéεη kwāa, (k) phéεη lǎaj, (l) thỳyk kwāa, (m) mán sèεp lǎaj kwāa.

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

- A. Repeat each utterance after the instructor.**
- B. Self-correcting shows you are making progress, which will lead to building your self-confidence.**
- C. Be sure you comprehend each utterance you make.**

**Greeting Cycle**

**M-1**

(To be) well, comfortable	sá-baaj	ສະບາຍ
(To be) good, well	dii	ດີ

Hello! Hi!	sá-baaj dii	ສະບາຍດີ
------------	-------------	---------

**M-2**

(Question word)	bɔɔ	ບໍ່?
You	càw, thāan	ເຈົ້າ, ທ່າ

How are you?	sá-baaj dii bɔɔ?	ສະບາຍດີບໍ່?
How are you?	càw sá-baaj dii bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າສະບາຍດີບໍ່?

**M-3**

Thank you	khòp-caj	ຂອບໃຈ
I, me	khôj	ຂ້ອຍ
And (what) how about?	...dee?	...ແດ?
Family	khòp-khúa	ຄອບຄົວ

Fine, thank you.	sá-baaj dii, khòp-caj.	ສະບາຍດີ, ຂອບໃຈ.
I'm fine, thank you.	khôj sá-baaj dii, khòp-caj.	ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ, ຂອບໃຈ.
And you?	càw dee?	ເຈົ້າແດ?
And your family?	khòp-khúa càw dee?	ຄອບຄົວເຈົ້າແດ?

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

**M-4**

To say goodbye	láa	ລາ
First, before	kōon	ກ່ອນ
To meet, find	phòo	ພໍ້
Each other	kan	ກັນ
New, again	māj	ໃໝ່
To invite; please	séen	ເຊີ
To go	paj	ໄປ

Goodbye!	láa kōon	ລາກ່ອນ !
See you again!	phòo kan māj!	ພໍ້ກັນ ໃໝ່!
Farewell! Take care!	séen paj dii!	ເຊີ ໄປດີ!

**C-1.**

- |                                    |                 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| A. Hello! [Hi, good morning, etc.] | A. sá-baaj dii. |
| B. Hello! [Hi, good morning, etc.] | B. sá-baaj dii. |

**C-2**

- |                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. How are you?              | A. sá-baaj dii boo?                |
| B. Fine, thank you, and you? | B. sá-baaj dii khōop-caj, càw dee? |
| A. I'm fine, thank you.      | A. khōj sá-baaj dii, khōop-caj.    |

**C-3**

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| A. How are you?                     | A. càw sá-baaj dii boo?                     |
| B. I'm fine, thank you.<br>And you? | B. khōj sá-baaj dii, khōop-caj,<br>càw dee? |
| A. I'm fine, thank you.             | A. khōj sá-baaj dii, khōop-caj.             |

**C-4**

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| A. How's your family?               | A. khōop-khúa cáw sá-baaj dii boo?            |
| B. My family is fine.<br>Thank you. | B. khōop-khúa khōj sá-baaj dii.<br>khōop-caj. |

**C-5**

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A. Goodbye. See you again.  | A. láa kōon! phòo kan māj.     |
| B. Farewell! See you again. | B. séen paj dii! phòo kan māj. |

NOTES

- 1) A Lao sentence has two parts: a Subject and a Predicate.

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Predicate</u>
<u>càw</u> "You"	<u>sá-baa_j dii</u> are well, fine."

- 2) The Subject is a Noun Phrase. A Noun Phrase is a (1) Noun plus modifiers, determiners, etc. or (2) a Noun Substitute (pronoun, etc.).

Noun Phrase

càw  
"you"

- 3) The Predicate is a Verb Phrase. A Verb Phrase is a Verb (or Verbs) with optional preferable elements and post verbal complements.

Verb Phrase

sá-baa\_j dii  
"(is/are) well, fine"

- 4) The Subject (NP) precedes the Predicate (VP), thus a Sentence (S) can be written in this way:

S → NP + VP

which means, "A sentence consists of a Noun Phrase preceding a Verb Phrase".

- 5) A sentence can be changed into a question by the addition of a question word (Q), thus S + Q.

NP	+	VP	+	Q
<u>càw</u>		<u>sá-baa_j dii</u>		<u>boo</u>
(you		[are] well		Question)

"Are you well?"

APPLICATION

1. khôj is probably the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sentence khôj sá-baa j dii  
(a) predicate (b) subject (c) question word (d) non of the these.

***(All answers are at the bottom of the page)***

2. In the sentence sá-baa j dii boo, sá-baa j dii is (a) subject  
(b) question word (c) predicate (d) none of these.
3. In the sentence càw sá-baa j dii boo, boo is (a) the question word (b) predicate  
(c) subject (d) none of these.
4. càw sá-baa j dii boo is (a) a statement (b) a question  
(c) a command (d) none of these.
5. boo càw sá-baa j dii is (a) a question (b) a statement  
(c) a command (d) none of these.
- 6.

---

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3a, 4b, 5d

Cycle 1

M-1

Pen	pâak-kaa	ປາກກາ
Table	to'	ໂຕະ
Chair	tān-ìi	ຕັ້ງອີ້
Book	pým	ປຶ້ມ
Paper	cìa	ເຈ້ງ

This is a pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ.
This is a table.	an nìi mēen to'	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນໂຕະ.
This is a chair.	an nìi mēen tān-ìi.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນຕັ້ງອີ້.
This is a book.	an nìi mēen pým.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປຶ້ມ.
This is paper.	an nìi mēen cìa.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນເຈ້ງ.

M-2

What	njǎn	ຫຍັງ
That	nàn	ນັ້ນ
Wall	fǎa	ຝາ

What is this?	an nìi mēen njǎn?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນຫຍັງ?
What is that?	an nàn mēen njǎn?	ອັນນັ້ນແມ່ນຫຍັງ?
That is a wall.	an nàn mēen fǎa.	ອັນນັ້ນແມ່ນຝາ.

C-1

- |                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| A. What is this? | A. an nìi mēen njǎn?     |
| B. This a pen.   | B. an nìi mēen pâak-kaa. |

C-2

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| A. What is that?    | A. an nàn mēen njǎn?   |
| B. That is a chair. | B. an nàn mēen tān-ìi. |

ເມື່ອສອນ ໄຊເກີລ ນີ້ແລ້ວ ທ່ານລອງຖາມສະບາຍນັກຮຽນທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ! ເຂົາເຈົ້າສາມາດຖາມສະບາຍທ່ານ

ຄື ໄດ້ລຸ່ງ ແລະຖືກສຽງດີບໍ່? ຖ້າຫາກວ່າຍັງບໍ່ຄ່ອງດີກໍໃຫ້ທ່າ ຈົງພາເຂົາເຈົ້າຝຶກຫັດເວົ້າອີກແດ່.

---

**NOTES**

- 1) The Verb phrase may consist of a Verb (V) with a Noun Phrase complement, thus VP → V + NP.

Verb	+	NP
<u>mēɛn</u>		<u>pâak-kaa</u>
"is		(a) pen"

The following sentence is an example of the copula verb mēɛn followed by NP complement:

NP	+	V	+	NP
<u>an nîi</u>		<u>mēɛn</u>		<u>pâak-kaa</u>
"This		is		f(a) pen."

- 2) The NP an nîi is made up of a Noun an plus a determiner nîi.
- 3) an belongs to a special class of nouns that serve as substitutes for other nouns. They are called "classifiers." an can be used as a substitute for any inanimate noun (pen, chair, etc.). an nîi means "this" or "this one".
- 4) tāŋ-îi, to', pâak-kaa and other nouns like this (things that can be counted) have no number indication in Lao, so they may refer to one or more than one thing according to the construction they occur in.

njǎŋ "what?" is a question word substitute. It substitutes for all inanimate nouns and for some other nouns in questions. Observe the following example :

	NP	+	V (copula)	+	NP
Question:	<u>an nîi</u>		<u>mēɛn</u>		<u>njǎŋ</u>
	(this		is		what)
			" What's this? "		

Response:	<u>an nîi</u>		<u>mēɛn</u>		<u>to'</u>
	"This		is		(a) table."

njǎŋ is in the same position in the sentence as the word it replaces. (NOTE: This is not the case with English what.)



What is this?  
This is a book.

- 5) mēɛn "be" is used to indicate the identification of things in the example given. It has other uses, but is much more restricted in use than "be" in English.

### APPLICATION

In the sentence an nìi mēɛn pâak-kaa.

1. an nìi is (a) predicate (b) subject (c) Noun Phrase complement (d) Verb Phrase.
2. mēɛn is (a) Noun phrase (b) question (c) Verb (d) complement of the verb.
3. pâak-kaa is (a) Verb Phrase (b) Noun Phrase complement of mēɛn (c) question (d) predicate.

In the sentence an nìi mēɛn njǎŋ

4. njǎŋ refers to (a) an animate noun (b) the Verb Phrase (c) it is a noun.
5. mēɛn is (a) a copula verb (b) it is used to identify the subject (c) it is a noun phrase (d) it is none of these.
6. an is a classifier and refers to things, not people. True or false?
7. nìi (a) means "this" (b) it is a Noun Phrase (c) it is a determiner (d) it precedes the classifier.
8. tāŋ-ìi may mean (a) "a chair" (b) "chair" (c) "the chair" (d) "chairs" (f) any of these.

---

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3b, 4c, 5a-b, 6true, 7a and c, 8f

Cycle-2

M-1

I, me	khôj	ຂ້ອຍ
You	càw, thāan	ເຈົ້າ, ທ່າ
He, she	láaw, phēn	ລາວ, ເພື່ອນ
We (all)	phùak-háw	ພວກເຮົາ
We	phùak-khôj	ພວກຂ້ອຍ
You (pl.)	phùak-càw	ພວກເຈົ້າ
They	khá-càw	ເຂົາເຈົ້າ

This is my pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa khôj.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາຂ້ອຍ.
This is your pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa càw.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາເຈົ້າ.
This is his (her) pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa láaw.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາລາວ.
This is our pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa phùak háw.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ ພວກເຮົາ.
This is our pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa phùak-khôj.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ ພວກຂ້ອຍ.
This is your pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa phùak-càw.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ ພວກເຈົ້າ.
This is their pen.	an nìi mēen pâak-kaa khá-càw.	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

M-2

Pencil	sǎw-dam	ສໍດຳ
Chalk	sǎw-khǎaw	ສໍຂາວ
Hat	múak	ຫມວກ
Raincoat	sýa-fǒn	ເສື້ອຝົນ
Umbrella	khán-hōm	ຄໍ ຮົ່ມ

Whose pencil is this?	an nìi mēen sǎw-dam phǎj?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນສໍດຳໃຜ?
Whose chalk is this?	an nìi mēen sǎw-khǎaw phǎj?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນສໍຂາວໃຜ?
Whose hat is this?	an nìi mēen múak phǎj?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນຫມວກໃຜ?
Whose raincoat is this?	an nìi mēen sýa-fǒn phǎj?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນເສື້ອຝົນໃຜ?
Whose umbrella is this?	an nìi mēen khán-hōm phǎj?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນຄໍຮົ່ມໃຜ?

C-1

- |                       |                               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. Whose pen is this? | A. an nìi mēen pâak-kaa phǎj? |
| B. This is my pen.    | B. an nìi mēen pâak-kaa khôj. |

C-2

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. What is this?        | A. an nìi mēen njǎng?     |
| B. This is a hat.       | B. an nìi mēen múak.      |
| A. Whose hat is this?   | A. an nìi mēen múak phǎj? |
| B. This is his/her hat. | B. an nìi mēen múak láaw. |

Supplement to Cycle 2

Excuse me!	khǎw-thòot!	ຂໍໂທດ!
It does not matter!	bōw pen njǎŋ!	ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ!
Thank you.	khôp-caj.	ຂອບໃຈ.
You are welcome.	bōw pen njǎŋ.	ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ.

ໂລຍະນີ້ແມ່ນໂລຍະທີ່ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງກຳກັບນຳການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ ກ່ອນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊົນກັບການເວົ້າຫລືການອອກສຽງທີ່ຜິດພາດ.

**C-1**

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| A. Excuse me! | A. khǎw-thòot!   |
| B. It's O.K.  | B. bōw pen njǎŋ. |

**C-2**

- |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. Excuse me, what is this? | A. khǎw-thòot, an nìi mēen njǎŋ? |
| B. This is a pen.           | B. an nìi mēen pâak-kaa.         |
| A. Thank you.               | A. khôp-caj.                     |
| B. You are welcome.         | B. bōw pen njǎŋ.                 |

**C-3**

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| A. Excuse me, is this your pen? | A. khǎw-thòot, an nìi mēen pâak-kaa càw bōw? |
| B. No, it's your pen.           | B. bōw, an nìi mēen pâak-kaa càw.            |
| A. Thank you.                   | A. khôp-caj.                                 |
| B. You are welcome.             | B. bōw pen njǎŋ.                             |

ການປ່ອຍປະລະເລີຍຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນໃນຂັ້ນນີ້ ຈະເປັນການສ້າງປັນຫາໄວ້ໃຫ້ແກ່ທ່ານ ເອງໃ ພາຍຂ້າງໜ້າ. ສະນັ້ນ "ຢ່າເສັງຫຍ້າປົກຂີ້ຫມາ!" ຈົງຊ່ອຍແນບນຳນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ.

NOTES

- 1) The NP may consist of N + NP in which the second noun or Noun substitute stands in the relationship of "possessor"<sup>1</sup> to the main or "head" noun, as in this example:

Noun	+	NP	(Possessor)
<u>pâak-kaa</u>		<u>khôj</u>	
pen		I	

"My pen"

- 2) phǎj "who, whose, whom" is a question word substitute. It substitutes only for animate nouns and noun substitutes in questions.

Noun	+	NP	(Possessor)
<u>pâak-kaa</u>		<u>láaw</u>	
pen		he	

"His pen"

<u>pâak-kaa</u>	<u>phǎj</u>
pen	who

"Whose pen"

phǎj occupies the same position in the sentence as the noun it substitutes for.

- 3) Since the form of the pronoun does not change in Lao (like English I "me" "my" "mine, etc.) its structural relationship is determined by the kind of construction it is in, thus:

---

<sup>1</sup> The term 'possessor' implies a varied set of structural and semantic relationships besides simple ownership in Lao just as it does in English.

(a) As subject of a sentence

khôj sá-baa dii  
 I am fine.

(b) As "possessor" after the "head" noun

pâak-kaa khôj  
 pen my  
 "my pen"

4) Although sex distinctions are not indicated in the Lao pronoun, number distinctions are:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
<u>khôj</u> "I"	<u>phùak-khôj</u> "we" <u>phùak-háw</u> "we"
<u>càw</u> "you"	<u>phùak-càw</u> "you (plural) "
<u>láaw</u> "he, she"	<u>khá-càw</u> "they"

Both phùak-háw and phùak-khôj mean "we". phùak-háw is used when the speaker wishes to include the hearer in his reference. phùak-khôj is used when he does not wish to include the hearer.

None of these pronouns may be used to refer to inanimate object objects, thus láaw does not mean "it" and khá-càw does not refer to "they" for objects.

APPLICATION

1. In the NP pỳm cằw, cằw can be translated as (a) you, (b) yours, (c) your, (d) none of these.
2. In the NP sỏo-dam khá-cằw, khá-cằw means (a) they, (b) their (c) theirs, (d) none of these.
3. In the NP mủak láaw, láaw means (a) him, (b) her, (c) she, (d) his, (e) all of these (if) non of these.
4. In the NP pầak-kaa khỏj, khỏj means (a) I, (b) my, (c) me, (d) mine.
5. In the NP to' phủak-cằw, phủak-cằw means (a) one male person, (b) more than one person, (c) one female person.
6. In the NP cỉa phỏj, phỏj (a) is a question word, (b) means "what?", (c) means "whose", (d) has no meaning.
7. cằw pầak-kaa means (a) my pen, (b) your pen, (c) his pen, (d) it has no meaning.
8. Translate the following NP into English : (a) sỏo-dam phỏj, (b) mủak, (c) tầng-ỉi cằw, (d) cỉa khỏj, (e) pỳm khá-cằw, (f) pầak-kaa phủak-cằw, (g) sỷa-fỏn phỏj, (h) to' phủak-hằw.

---

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b and d, 4b, 5b, 6a, and c, 7d, 8 (a) whose pencil, (b) his/her hat, (c) your (sg.) chair, (d) my paper, (e) their book(s), (f) your (pl.) pen, (g) whose rain coat, (h) our table.

Cycle 3

M-1

Office building	hóoŋ-kaan	ໂຮງກາ
Office	hóoŋ-kaan	ຫ້ອງກາ
School	hóoŋ-hían	ໂຮງຮຽ
Hospital	hóoŋ-mǎo	ໂຮງຫມໍ
Post office	hóoŋ-sǎaj	ໂຮງສາຍ

Is this an office building?	nìi mēen hóoŋ-kaan bǎo?	ນີ້ແມ່ນໂຮງການບໍ?
Is this an office?	nìi mēen hóoŋ-kaan bǎo?	ນີ້ແມ່ນຫ້ອງການບໍ?
Is this a school?	nìi mēen hóoŋ-hían bǎo?	ນີ້ແມ່ນໂຮງຮຽນບໍ?
Is this a hospital?	nìi mēen hóoŋ-mǎo bǎo?	ນີ້ແມ່ນໂຮງຫມໍບໍ?
Is this a post office?	nìi mēen hóoŋ-sǎaj bǎo?	ນີ້ແມ່ນໂຮງສາຍບໍ?

M-2

Market	tá-lâat	ຕລາດ (ຕະຫລາດ)
Hotel	hóoŋ-héem	ໂຮງແຮມ
Restaurant	hàan-aa-hǎan	ຮ້າ ອາຫາ
Police station	kom-tam-lúat	ກົມຕຳຫລວດ
Embassy	khàaj thā-hǎan	ສະຖານທູດ

Yes, this is a market.	mēen lèew, nìi mēen tá-lâat.	ແມ່ນແລ້ວ, ນີ້ແມ່ນ ຕລາດ. (ຕະຫລາດ)
Yes, this is a hotel.	mēen lèew, nìi mēen hóoŋ-héem.	ແມ່ນແລ້ວ, ນີ້ແມ່ນ ໂຮງແຮມ.
Yes, this is a restaurant.	mēen lèew, nìi mēen hàan-aa-hǎan.	ແມ່ນແລ້ວ, ນີ້ແມ່ນຮ້ານ ອາຫາ .
Yes, this is the police station.	mēen lèew, nìi mēen kom-tam-lúat.	ແມ່ນແລ້ວ, ນີ້ແມ່ນກົມ ຕຳຫລວດ.
Yes, this is the military base	mēen lèew, nìi mēen khàaj thā-hǎan.	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ນີ້ແມ່ນຄ້າຍ ທະຫາ .



C-1

- A. Is this a hotel?      A. nìi mēen hóoṅ-héem boo?  
 B. Yes, this is a hotel.    B. mēen lèew, nìi mēen hóoṅ-héem.

ຈົງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຊີ້ມືໃສ່ສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆ ແລ້ວຖາມແລະຕອບກັນ

C-2

- A. Is this your book?      A. an nìi mēen pỳm càw boo?  
 B. Yes, this is my book.    B. mēen lèew, an nìi mēen pỳm  
    khôj.

ໃນຕອນນີ້ກໍເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມແລະຕອບກັນເບິ່ງວ່າ ສິ່ງຂອງອັນໃດແມ່ນຂອງຜູ້ໃດ

C-3

- A. Whose book is this?      A. an nìi mēen pỳm phǎj?  
       Is it yours?                    pỳm càw boo?  
 B. Yes, this is my book.    B. mēen lèew, an nìi mēen pỳm  
    khôj.

ນີ້ກໍເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນກັບ C1 ແລະ C2 ກ່ອນທີ່ທ່ານຈະສອນບົດຮຽນຕໍ່ໄປ  
ທ່ານລອງພາຍາມປະດິດເຮື້ອງໃດນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນຢ່າງ ສັ້ນໆ ແລ້ວເລົ່າສູ່ນັກຮຽນຟັງ ໂດຍອາສັຍຄຳສັບທີ່ຮຽນມາແຕ່ຕົ້ນ  
ແລ້ວກໍສັງເກດເບິ່ງວ່ານັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈໄດ້ດີຫລືບໍ່

NOTES

- 1) One type of Noun Compound is composed of Noun + Noun, in which the second noun stands in a "modifier" relationship to the first or head noun. The following are examples:

Noun + Noun ("Modifier")

1) hàan      aa-hǎan

shop      food

"restaurant"

- 2)    hóoŋ        mốo  
building        medical doctor  
                  "hospital"
- 3)    khàa.j        thā-hǎan  
camp            military persons  
                  "camp, fort"
- 4)    s̄yā            fốn  
clothing        rain  
                  "raincoat"

Another type of Noun Compound is made up of Noun + Verb and is similar to a Sentence :

- Noun + Verb
- 1)    sốo            dam  
stick            black  
                  "pencil"
- 2)    khán            hōm  
rod              shade  
                  "umbrella"

- 2) n̄i means "here, this, this one" when it occurs alone. It may also occur after the classifier as a determiner, as in an n̄i "this, this one".
- 3) Observe the relationship between a question with mēen bōo and its affirmative response:

## LAO BASIC COURSE

---

Question: NP + mēɛn + NP + bɔɔ  
nìi mēɛn hóoŋ-mɔɔ bɔɔ

Affirmative

Response: mēɛn lèɛw

Both the Subject NP and the Complement NP are usually absent in the response; however, the response may contain a complete confirmation after the mēɛn lèɛw response, as follows:

Question: nìi mēɛn hóoŋ-mɔɔ bɔɔ?

Response: mēɛn lèɛw, nìi mēɛn hóoŋ-mɔɔ

### APPLICATION

- 1) In the Noun Compound s̄yā-fǒn, s̄yā is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier of fǒn, (c) the classifier, (d) none of these.
- 2) In the Noun Compound hàan aa-hǎan, aa-hǎan is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier, (c) a question word, (d) none of these.
- 3) In the Noun Compound hóoŋ-hían, hían is (a) a Noun, (b) a verb (c) VP, (d) none of these.
- 4) khán-hōm is (a) a NP, (b) VP, (c) S, (d) Noun Compound, (e) none of these, (f) all of these.
- 5) dam sǔɔ means (a) black stick, (b) pencil, (c) pen, (d) it is meaningless.
- 6) "Fort" is translated into Lao, as (a) s̄yā thā-hǎan, (b) hàaj thā-hǎan, (c) hóoŋ thā-hǎan (d) khàaj aa-hǎan, (e) thā-hǎan khàaj.
- 7) "Raincoat" is translated into Lao as (a) fǒn s̄yā, (b) fǒn mɔɔ, (c) s̄yā-fǒn, (d) s̄yā p̄ȳm, (e) s̄yā-fǒn.

---

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3b, 4a and d, 5d, 6b, 7c

- 8) A correct response to the question nìi mēen hooṅ-mǎw bɔw is  
 (a) lèɛw, (b) lèɛw bɔw (c) mēen lèɛw (d) mēen (e) mēen bɔw  
 (f) mēen lèɛw, nìi mēen hooṅ mǎw
- 9) If you wanted to find out if something was a book, what would you say?
- 10) If you wanted to find out if a certain umbrella belonged to a particular person, what would you say?

**Cycle 4**

**M -1**

Garage	haàn peng lot	ຮ້ານແປງລົດ
Court	sǎan	ສາ
Post office	hooṅ-kaan paj sá-níi	ໂຮງກາ ໄປສະ <sup>ນີ</sup>
Church	bôot	ໂບດ
Zoo	sǔan-sát	ສວ ສັດ

They are going to the garage.	khá-càw si paj ūu-sôom-lôt.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າສິໄປຮູ້ສ້ອມລົດ.
They are going to court.	khá-càw si paj sǎan.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າສິໄປສາ .
They are going to the post office.	khá-càw si paj hooṅ-kaan paj sá-níi.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າສິໄປໂຮງກາ ໄປສະ <sup>ນີ</sup> .
They are going to church.	khá-càw si paj bôot.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າສິໄປໂບດ.
They are going to the zoo.	khá-càw si paj sǔan-sát.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າສິໄປສວ ສັດ.

**Answers: 8c, d, f, 9(an) nìi mēen pỳm bɔw, 10(an) nìi mēen khán-hōm càw bɔw (or) (an) nìi mēen khán-hōm phǎj**

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

**M -2**

The children	dék-nòvǵ	ເດັກ ອຍ
The monks	khúu-baa	ຄູບາ
The athletes	nāk-kii-láa	ກກີລາ
The beauty queen	náaṅ-ṅáam	ງາງາມ
Custom officers	náaj-pháa-sǐi	າຍພາສີ

Where are the children going?	dék-nòvǵ si paj sǎj?	ເດັກ ອຍສິໄປໃສ?
Where are the monks going?	khúu-baa si paj sǎj?	ຄູບາສິໄປໃສ?
Where are the athletes going?	nāk-kii-láa si paj sǎj?	ກກີລາສິໄປໃສ?
Where is the beauty queen going?	náaṅ-ṅáam si paj sǎj?	ງາງາມສິໄປໃສ?
Where are the custom officers going?	náaj-pháa-sǐi si paj sǎj?	າຍພາສີສິໄປໃສ?

**M-3**

Theater	hóṅ-síi-née (hóṅ-sǎaj-hùup-ṅáw)	ໂຮງຊີເ (ໂຮງສາຍຮູບເງົາ)
Temple	wāt	ວັດ
Shoe store	hàan-khǎaj kḕep	ຮ້າ ຂາຍເກີບ
Beauty-parlor	hàan-sǎem-sǎaj	ຮ້າ ເສີມສວຍ
Custom house	hóṅ-kaan-pháa-sǐi	ໂຮງກາ ພາສີ
Printing office	hóṅ-phím	ໂຮງພິມ

Are you going to the theater?	càw si paj hóṅ-síi-née bvv?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປໂຮງຊີເ ບໍ?
Are you going to the temple?	càw si paj wāt bvv?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປວັດບໍ?
Are you going to the shoe store?	càw si paj hàan-khǎaj- kḕep bvv?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປຮ້າ ຂາຍ ເກີບບໍ?
Are you going to the beauty parlor?	càw si paj hàan-sǎem- sǎaj bvv?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປຮ້າ ເສີມ ສວຍບໍ?

to be continued...

M-3 Continued

Are you going to the custom house?	càw si paj hóoŋ-kaan-pháa-sǐi bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປໂຮງກາພາສີບໍ?
Are you going to the printing office?	càw si paj hóoŋ-phím bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປໂຮງພິມບໍ?

**M-4**

To go	paj	ໄປ
Not going	bɔɔ paj	ບໍ່ໄປ

Yes, I'm going.	paj.	ໄປ
No, I am not going.	bɔɔ paj.	ບໍ່ໄປ.

**C-1**

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. Are you going to the shoe store?   | A. càw si paj hàan-khǎaj-kêep bɔɔ?   |
| B. Yes. I am going to the shoe store. | B. paj, khôj si paj hàan-khǎaj-kêep. |

**C-2**

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. Are you going to the custom house? | A. càw si paj hóoŋ-kaan pháa-sǐi bɔɔ? |
| B. No, I'm not going.                 | B. bɔɔ, bɔɔ paj.                      |

**C-3**

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Where is he going?     | A. láaw si paj sǎj?       |
| B. He is going to school. | B. láaw si paj hóoŋ-hían. |

---

ຢ່າໃຫ້ຄຳໃຫມ່ອື່ນອີກ ແຕ່ພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າປະໂຫຍກທີ່ກຳລັງຮຽນຢູ່ນີ້ໃຫ້ຄ່ອງ

---

**C-4**

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. Are you going to the post office?  | A. càw si paj hóoŋ-sǎaj boo?         |
| B. Yes, I'm going to the post office. | B. mēɛn lèɛw, khôj si paj hóoŋ-sǎaj. |

---

ຢ່າລືມວ່າ ເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຫຍັງ ຈົງໃຫ້ແຈ້ງ ໃຈວ່າ ເຂົາເຈົ້າເວົ້າດ້ວຍຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ.

---

NOTES

- 1) Verbs of motion frequently have locative (place word) complements.

NP	+	pre-V	+	V (motion)	+	Loc
<u>khá-càw</u>		<u>si</u>		<u>paj</u>		<u>tá-lâat</u>
they		{will	go			
		{are	going			(to the) market

No relational word is necessary between the verb of motion and the place expression.

- 2) sǎj "where" is a question word that stands in a substitute relationship with locatives:

Question: càw si paj sǎj? "Where are you going?"

Response: khôj si paj tá-lâat "I'm going to the market."

si is a pre-verb used to indicate incomplete action here.

- 3) mēɛn lèɛw is an acceptable affirmative response to any question with boo as the question word.

Question: <u>càw si paj hóoŋ-sǎaj</u> <u>boo?</u>	Are you going to Post office?
--	----------------------------------

Affirmative

Response: <u>mēɛn lèɛw</u> , [ <u>khôj si paj</u> <u>hóoŋ-sǎaj</u> ]	Yes, (I'm going to the Post Office).
---	---

The confirmation part of the response is optional, although fairly common.

APPLICATION

- 1) In the sentence láaw si paj tá-lâat, the action (a) has already taken place (b) will take place in the future (c) taken place regularly (d) is taking place at present (e) it's impossible to tell when the action takes place.
- 2) In the sentence khá-càw si paj hóoŋ-mǎo, hóoŋ-mǎo is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) locative (d) all of these.
- 3) In the sentence above, si paj is (a) a pre-verb + V, (b) NP, (c) VP, (d) the predicate.
- 5) Which of the following is a possible response to the question paj sǎj? :  
(a) paj tá-lâat, (b) hóoŋ-sǎaj, (c) mēen lèew, (d) paj pým,  
(e) khôj si paj.
- 5) Which of the following is a correct response to the question phùak-càw si paj kom-tam-lûat boo? (a) si paj, (b) càw boo,  
(c) paj lèew, (d) mēen lèew, phùak-háw si paj kom-tam-lûat,  
(f) paj, (g) All except (b) are possible answers.

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2a and c, 3a, 4a, 5g



Cycle 5

M-1

You are going to school, aren't you?	càw si paj hoóng-hían, mēen boov?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປໂຮງຮຽນ , ແມ່ ບໍ່?
This is a pen, isn't it?	an nìi mēen pāak-kaa, mēen boov?	ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນປາກກາ, ແມ່ ບໍ່?
He is going to the restaurant, isn't he?	láaw si paj hāan- aa-hāan, mēen boov?	ລາວສິໄປຮ້າ ອາຫາ , ແມ່ ບໍ່?
This is the police station, isn't it?	nìi mēen kom- tam-lúat, mēen boov?	ນີ້ແມ່ນກົມຕຳຫລວດ, ແມ່ ບໍ່?

M-2

No, he is not going to the hotel. He is going to the restaurant.	bōo mēen, láaw si bōo paj hóoŋ-héem. láaw si paj hàan-aa-hǎan.	ບໍ່ແມ່ , ລາວສິບໍ່ໄປ ໂຮງແຮມ. ລາວສິໄປ ຮ້າ ອາຫາ .
No, this is not a book. This is paper.	bōo mēen, an nìi bōo mēen pỳm. an nìi mēen cìa.	ບໍ່ແມ່ນ, ອັນນີ້ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ປຶ້ມ. ອັນນີ້ແມ່ນເຈ້ງ.
No, I'm not going to the office building. I am going to the post office.	bōo mēen, khōj si bōo paj hóoŋ-kaan. khōj si paj hóoŋ-sǎaj.	ບໍ່ແມ່ , ຂ້ອຍສິບໍ່ໄປໂຮງກາ . ຂ້ອຍສິໄປໂຮງສາຍ.
No, this is not the hotel.	bōo mēen, nìi bōo mēen hóoŋ-héem.	ບໍ່ແມ່ນ, ນີ້ບໍ່ແມ່ນໂຮງແຮມ.
This is the restaurant.	nìi mēen hàan-aa-hǎan.	ນີ້ແມ່ນຮ້ານອາຫານ.

C-1

- A. He is going to the restaurant isn't he?      A. láaw si paj hàan aa-hǎan, mēen bōo?
- B. No, he is going to the hotel.      B. bōo mēen, láaw si paj hóoŋ-héem.

ໃ ເວລາສອ ັກຮຽ ຈົງພຍາຍາມເວົ້າດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວແບບທຳມະດາ ຢ່າເວົ້າຊ້າຈີ ຜິດທຳມະດາ. ັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງຫັດພັງ ແລະເຂົ້າໃຈການເວົ້າຢ່າງທຳມະດາແຕ່ດຮວນີ້ໄປ.

C-2

- A. This is a table, isn't it?      A. an nìi mēen to', mēen bōo?
- B. No, this is a chair.      B. bōo mēen, an nìi mēen tāŋ-ìi.

C-3

## LAO BASIC COURSE

---

- A. This is an office, isn't it?      A. nìi mēen hōoŋ-kaan, mēen bōo?  
B. No, this is not an office.      B. bōo mēen, nìi bōo mēen  
This is a classroom.                      hōoŋ-kaan. nìi mēen hōoŋ-hían.

### NOTES

- 1) mēen bōo can be attached to any statement (S + mēen bōo). The usual affirmative response is mēen lèew or càw with or without confirmatory statement. The usual negative response is bōo mēen plus a Statement of the actual facts.

Question: láaw si paj hāan-aa-hǎan, mēen bōo?

Affirmative

Response: mēen lèew, [láaw si paj hāan-aa-hǎan]

Or càw, [láaw si paj hāan-aa-hǎan]

Negative

Response: bōo mēen, láaw si paj hōoŋ-héem.

### APPLICATION

- 1) Which of the following responses is a correct negative response to láaw si paj hāan aa-hǎan, mēen bōo? (a) bōo, (b) bōo mēen, (c) bōo paj, (d) bōo hāan aa-hǎan, (e) bōo mēen, láaw si paj hōoŋ-héem.
- 2) Which of these sentences is correct  
(a) láaw bōo si paj hōoŋ-hían  
(b) láaw si bōo paj hōoŋ-hían,  
(c) láaw si paj bōo hōoŋ-hían  
(d) láaw bōo paj si hōoŋ-hían.

---

Answers: 1 a and b, 2 b

3. Which of these sentences is correct
- (a) nìi mēen bōo hooŋ-héem,
  - (b) nìi bōo mēen hooŋ-héem
  - (c) hooŋ-héem bōo nìi
  - (d) bōo nìi mēen hooŋ-héem.
4. Disagree with this statement: láaw si paj hooŋ-kaan.
5. Disagree with this sentence: an nìi mēen pým.
6. Translate the following sentences into English
- (a) khá-càw si paj hooŋ-kaan
  - (b) khôj si bōo paj tá-lâat
  - (c) phùak-càw si paj haaŋ aa-hăan, mēen bōo?
  - (d) càw si bōo paj kom-tam-luat mēen bōo?
  - (e) láaw si paj khàaj-thā-hăan
  - (f) càw si paj sǎj?
  - (g) phùak-háw si bōo paj hooŋ-mōo
  - (h) càw si paj hooŋ-héem, mēen bōo?

---

Answers: 3 b,

4 láaw si bōo paj hooŋ-kaan.

5 an nìi bōo mēen pým.

6 (a) They are going to the office. (b) I'm not going to the market. (c) You're going to the restaurant, aren't you? (d) You're not going to the Police Station, are you? (e) He/she is going to the military post. (f) Where are you going? (g) We are not going to the hospital. (h) You're going to the hotel, aren't you?

CYCLE- 6

M-1

Souksomboun	súk-sǒm-buun	ສຸກສົມບູນ
Manivone	mā-níi-wǒn	ມະນີວອນ
She	láaw	ລາວ
This person	khón phūu nìi	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້
My teacher	náaj-khúu khôj	າຍຄູຂ້ອຍ

His name is Souksomboun.	láaw s̄y s̄úk-sǒm-buun.	ລາວຊື່ສຸກສົມບູນ.
Her name is Manivone.	láaw s̄y mā-níi-wǒn.	ລາວຊື່ມະນີວອນ.
Her name is Manisone.	láaw s̄y mā-níi-sǒn.	ລາວຊື່ມະນີສອນ.
This person's name is Manisone.	khón phūu nìi s̄y mā-níi-sǒn.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ຊື່ມະນີສອນ.
My teacher's name is Manisone.	náaj-khúu khôj s̄y mā-níi-sǒn.	ນາຍຄູຂ້ອຍຊື່ມະນີສອນ .

**M-2**

You	càw	ເຈົ້າ
This student	nāk-hían phūu nìi	ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ນີ້
This service-man	thā-hǎan phūu nìi	ທະຫານຜູ້ນີ້
That police-man	tam-lúat phūu nàn	ຕໍາຫລວດຜູ້ນັ້ນ
That business person	nāk-thū-lā-kít phūu nàn	ນັກທຸລະກິດຜູ້ນັ້ນ
That government employee	phā-nāk-ḡàan-lāt phūu nàn	ພະນັກງານລັດຜູ້ນັ້ນ

What's you name?	càw s̄y njǎḡ?	ເຈົ້າຊື່ຫຍັງ?
What's this student's name?	nāk-hían phūu nìi s̄y njǎḡ?	ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ນີ້ຊື່ຫຍັງ?
What's this serviceman's name?	thā-hǎan phūu nìi s̄y njǎḡ?	ທະຫານຜູ້ນີ້ຊື່ຫຍັງ?
What's that policeman's name?	tam-lúat phūu nàn s̄y njǎḡ?	ຕໍາຫລວດຜູ້ນັ້ນຊື່ຫຍັງ?
What's that business person's name?	nāk-thū-lā-kít phūu nàn s̄y njǎḡ?	ນັກທຸລະກິດຜູ້ນັ້ນຊື່ຫຍັງ?
What's that government employee's name?	phā-nāk-ḡàan-lāt phūu nàn s̄y njǎḡ?	ພະນັກງານລັດຜູ້ນັ້ນຊື່ຫຍັງ?

**C-1**

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| A. What's your name? | A. càw s̄y njǎḡ? |
| B. My name is.....   | B. khôj s̄y..... |

**C-2**

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. Your student's name is...isn't it? | A. nāk-hían càw s̄y....<br>mēen boo?  |
| B. No, my student's name is...        | B. boo mēen, hóoḡ-hían<br>khôj s̄y... |

NOTES

- 1) The verb s̄y "to be named" requires an animate noun (or noun substitute) as a subject and a personal name as complement:

NP +	<u>s̄y</u>	+	NP
<u>láaw</u>	<u>s̄y</u>		<u>mā-níi-wóon</u>
"She	is named		Manivone."

A further restriction in this type of sentence is that the name must be appropriate (in terms of sex) to the subject. Manivone is a female name; Souksomboun is a male name.

The Noun Complement of s̄y may be replaced by njǎŋ in question:

Question: càw s̄y njǎŋ "What's your name?"

Response: khôj s̄y khám-dεεŋ "My name's Khamdaeng."

- 2) Since Lao nouns are not marked for number or for the definite, indefinite category, the Noun Phrase is marked only if it contains a Classifier Phrase. If it contains Classifier + Determiner, it is marked as definite (not generic). Compare the marked and unmarked examples below:

Generic: thā-hǎan "(a) soldier", "soldiers"

Definite: thā-hǎan phūu nìi "This soldier"

phūu is a classifier for human nouns. It is used only in the singular.

nìi is a determiner. It refers to something near the speaker.

phūu nìi is one type of classifier phrase.

nàn is also a determiner. It refers to something not near the speaker.

APPLICATION

- 1) A possible answer to the question : càw s̄y n̄jǎŋ is  
(a) khôj m̄ɛɛn kom-tam-luat, (b) khôj s̄y h̄oŋ-kaan,  
(c) khôj s̄y mā-líi-can, (d) khôj b̄o s̄y.
- 2) Which of the following sentences is correct Lao? (a) náaj-khúu láaw s̄y súk-sóm-buun, (b) láaw s̄y nāk-hían, (c) to' s̄y n̄jǎŋ,  
(d) pâak-kaa s̄y t̄aŋ-ìi, (e) láaw m̄ɛɛn mā-líi-can.
- 3) Translate the following NP into English: (a) nāk-hían phūu n̄i, (b) thā-hǎan phūu n̄i, (c) phā-nāk-ŋàan-lāt phūu n̄an, (d) tam-luat phūu n̄an,  
(e) khón phūu n̄i, (f) náaj-khúu phūu n̄an.
- 4) Match the questions with correct answers:  
(a) càw s̄y n̄jǎŋ? (a) m̄ɛɛn l̄ɛɛw,  
(b) láaw s̄y Peter, m̄ɛɛn b̄o? (b) khǒj si paj tá-lâat,  
(c) an n̄i m̄ɛɛn to' b̄o? (c) khôj s̄y mā-líi-can,  
(d) càw si paj s̄j? (d) m̄ɛɛn l̄ɛɛw, an n̄i m̄ɛɛn to'.

---

Answers: 1. c, 2. a, 3. (a) This student, (b) This serviceman, (c) That government employee, (d) That policeman, (e) This person, (f) That teacher. 4. a / c, b / a, c / d, d / b



Cycle 7

M- 1

To be tall, high	sǔnɯŋ	ສູງ
To be pretty	ŋáam	ງາມ
To be fat	tùj	ຸ້ຍ
To be skinny	cōj	ຈ່ອຍ
To be short, low	tām	ຕ່ຳ
To be good	dii	ດີ

Is he tall?	láaw sǔnɯŋ bōō?	ລາວສູງບໍ?
Is she pretty?	láaw ŋáam bōō?	ລາວງາມບໍ?
Is he fat?	láaw tùj bōō?	ລາວຸ້ຍບໍ?
Is he skinny?	láaw cōj bōō?	ລາວຈ່ອຍບໍ?
Is he short?	láaw tām bōō?	ລາວຕ່ຳບໍ?
Is he good?	láaw dii bōō?	ລາວດີບໍ?

M-2

To be good	dii	ດີ
To be kind	caj-dii	ໃຈດີ
To be bad	sūa	ຊົ່ວ
To be courageous	kàa-hǎan	ກ້າຫາ
To be studious	dú-mān	ດຸຫມັ່ນ
To be intelligent	sá-lâat	ສະຫລາດ, ສລາດ

He is a good person,      láaw pen khón dii,      ລາວເປັ ຄີ ດີ, ແມ່ ບໍ່?  
isn't he?                      mēen bɔɔ?

He is a kind person,      láaw pen khón caj-dii,      ລາວເປັ ຄີ ໃຈດີ, ແມ່ ບໍ່?  
isn't he?                      mēen bɔɔ?

He is a bad person,      láaw pen khón sūa, mēen      ລາວເປັນຄົນຊົ່ວ, ແມ່ນບໍ່?  
isn't he?                      bɔɔ?

He is a courageous      láaw pen khón kàa-hǎan,      ລາວເປັ ຄີ ກ້າຫາ ,  
person, isn't he?              mēen bɔɔ?                      ແມ່ ບໍ່?

He is a studious      láaw pen khón dú-mān,      ລາວເປັນຄົນດຸຫມັ່ນ,  
person, isn't he?              mēen bɔɔ?                      ແມ່ ບໍ່?

He is an intelligent      láaw pen khón sá-lâat,      ລາວເປັ ຄີ ສລາດ.  
person, isn't he?              mēen bɔɔ?                      ແມ່ ບໍ່?

**M-3**

To be strong	khě̌ɛŋ-hé̌ɛŋ	ແຂງແຮງ
To be weak	ō̌ɔn-ɛɛ	ອ່ອ ແອ
To be softhearted	caj-ō̌ɔn	ໃຈອ່ອ
To be hardhearted	caj-khě̌ɛŋ	ໃຈແຂງ
To be lazy	khîi-khàan	ຂີ້ຄ້ານ

He is a very strong person.	láaw pen khón khě̌ɛŋ-hé̌ɛŋ lǎaj.	ລາວເປັ ຄີ ແຂງແຮງ ຫລາຍ.
He is a very weak person.	láaw pen khón ō̌ɔn-ɛɛ lǎaj.	ລາວເປັ ຄີ ອ່ອ ແອ ຫລາຍ.
He is a very softhearted person.	láaw pen khón caj-ō̌ɔn lǎaj.	ລາວເປັ ຄີ ໃຈອ່ອ ຫລາຍ.
He is a very hardhearted person.	láaw pen khón caj-khě̌ɛŋ lǎaj.	ລາວເປັ ຄີ ໃຈແຂງ ຫລາຍ.
He is a very lazy person.	láaw pen khón khîi-khàan lǎaj.	ລາວເປັນຄົນຂີ້ຄ້ານ ຫລາຍ.

**C-1**

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| A. Is he tall? | A. láaw sǔuŋ bō̌ɔ? |
| B. Yes, he is. | B. sǔuŋ.           |

**C-2**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. He is a (studious) person, isn't he? | A. láaw pen khón [dú-mān]<br>mē̌ɛn bō̌ɔ?        |
| B. Yes, he is a very (studious) person. | B. mē̌ɛn lè̌ɛw, láaw pen khón<br>[dú-mān] lǎaj. |

Cycle 8

M-1

To be polite	sú-phàap	ສຸພາບ
To be intelligent	sá-lâat	ສລາດ
To be stupid	ḡo	ໄງ່
To be fat	ùan	ອ້ວ
To be skinny	cōoj	ຈ່ອຍ
To be good	dii	ດີ
To be tall, high	sũuḡ	ສູງ
To be short (height)	tìa	ເຕັ້ງ
To be short (height)	tām	ຕໍ່າ

This person is very polite.	khón phūu nìi sú-phàap lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ສຸພາບຫລາຍ.
This person is very intelligent.	khón phūu nìi sá-lâat lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ສລາດຫລາຍ.
This person is very stupid.	khón phūu nìi ḡo lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ໄງ່ຫລາຍ.
This person is very fat.	khón phūu nìi ùan lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ອ້ວນຫລາຍ.
This person is very skinny.	khón phūu nìi cōoj lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ຈ່ອຍຫລາຍ.
This person is very good.	khón phūu nìi dii lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ດີຫລາຍ.
This person is very tall.	khón phūu nìi sũuḡ lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ສູງຫລາຍ.
This person is very short.	khón phūu nìi tìa lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ເຕັ້ງຫລາຍ.
This person is very short.	khón phūu nìi tām lǎaj.	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ຕໍ່າຫລາຍ.

M - 2

Woman	phūu-njín	ຜູ້ຍິງ
Unmarried woman	phūu-sǎaw	ຜູ້ສາວ
Girl student	nāk-hían njín	ນັກຮຽນ ຍິງ
Secretary	lée-khǎa-nū-kaan	ເລຂານຸກາ
Unmarried man	phūu-bāaw	ຜູ້ບ່າວ
Young man	sáaj-nūm	ຊາຍໜຸ່ມ

That woman is a polite person.	phūu-njín phūu nàn pen khón sú-phàap.	ຜູ້ຍິງຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນສຸພາບ.
That unmarried woman is a polite person.	phūu-sǎaw phūu nàn pen khón sú-phàap.	ຜູ້ສາວຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນສຸພາບ.
That girl student is a polite person.	nāk-hían njín phūu nàn pen khón sú-phàap.	ນັກຮຽນຍິງຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນສຸພາບ.
That secretary is a pretty person.	lée-khǎa-nū-kaan phūu nàn pen khón ṽáam.	ເລຂານຸກາຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນງາມ.
That unmarried man is handsome person.	phūu-bāaw phūu nàn pen khón ṽáam.	ຜູ້ບ່າວຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນເຈົ້າຊູ້.
That young man is a handsome person.	sáaj-nūm phūu nàn pen khón ṽáam.	ຊາຍໜຸ່ມຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນເຈົ້າຊູ້.

M -3

Your friend	ph̄yan càw	ເພື່ອນ ເຈົ້າ
Government official	khâa-lât-thá-kaan	ຂ້າລັດຖະກາ
Military officer	náaj thā-hǎan	າຍທະຫາ
Police officer	náaj tam-lúat	າຍຕຳຫລວດ
Mailman	khón-sōᅇ-nǎᅇ-sýy	ຄົນສົ່ງຫນັງສື, ພະນັກງານໄປສະນີ
Interpreter	náaj-pháa-sǎa	າຍພາສາ

What sort of person is that friend of yours?	ph̄yan càw phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?
What sort of person is that government official?	khâa-lât-thá-kaan phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ຂ້າລັດຖະການຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?
What sort of person is that military officer?	náaj thā-hǎan phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ນາຍທະຫານຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?
What sort of person is that military officer?	náaj tam-lúat phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ນາຍຕຳຫລວດຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?
What sort of person is that mailman?	khón-sōᅇ-nǎᅇ-sýy phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ຄົນສົ່ງຫນັງສືຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?
What sort of person is that interpreter?	náaj pháa-sǎa phūu nǎn pen khón cāᅇ-daj?	ນາຍພາສາຜູ້ນັ້ນເປັນຄົນຈັ່ງໃດ?

**C-1**

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Is this woman tall? | A. phūu njíṅ phūu nìi sǔuṅ bōo? |
| B. She is very tall.   | B. láaw sūuṅ lǎaj.              |

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. What sort of person is that young man? | A. sáaj-nūm phūu nàṅ pen khón cāṅ-daj? |
| B. He is a polite person.                 | B. láaw pen khón sú-phàap.             |

NOTES

- 1) Words like sǔuṅ "tall", di "good" are called stative verbs (Vs). They function as the Main Verb (MV) in sentences describing the state or condition of something or someone.

NP	+	Vs
<u>láaw</u>		<u>sǔuṅ</u>
"He (is) tall."		

Since words having similar meanings are adjectives in English, "be" must be added in translation.

- 2) The following are transformations of the sentence láaw sǔuṅ (NP + Vs) :

Negative statement:	<u>láaw</u> <u>bōo</u> <u>sǔuṅ</u>	"He isn't tall."
Affirmative question:	<u>láaw</u> <u>sǔuṅ</u> <u>bōo?</u>	"Is he tall?"
Affirmative response:	<u>sǔuṅ</u>	"Yes, he is."
Negative response:	<u>bōo</u> <u>sǔuṅ</u> [ <u>lǎaj</u> ]	"No, not (very) tall"

---

These notes and the application are for use with cycles 7 and 8.

3) Stative verbs may also function as modifiers of NP:

NP            +    Vs  
khón            khîi-khàan  
 (person        lazy)  
 "lazy person"

4) NP of the type above often occur in sentences with pen as the copula verb:

NP            +    pen    +    NP  
láaw            pen            khón sá-lâat  
 "He's an intelligent person."

mēen ພ້ອມ may be added to form a question.

5) lǎaj occurs after Vs as an intensifier: sūun lǎaj "very tall", etc.

6) Both khěen-héen "strong, powerful" and ōon-εε "weak, frail, feeble" refer to physical strength.

7) Both tìa and tām may be used to refer to the shortness of a person, but tām is usually used in referring to objects.

8) cān-daj "what kind of, what sort of" is used with khón to inquire about a person's personal traits or physical features:

Question:    láaw pen khón cān-daj?            What sort of person is she?"

Answer:        láaw pen khón sá-lâat lǎaj        She's a very intelligent person.

Answer:        láaw sá-lâat lǎaj                            She's very intelligent."



APPLICATION

1. In the sentence càw sù-phàap, sù-phàap is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) Q (d) Vs (3) none of these.
2. ḡōo lǎaj is probably (a) a negative statement, (c) an affirmative response, (d) a negative response.
3. dii bōo is probably (a) a negative statement (b) a question (c) NP (d) negative response (e) none of these.
4. Which of these sentences has an error in it? (a) càw bōo tìa (b) láaw bōo pen sá-lâat (c) khôj cōoj (d) khón phūu nìi ḡōo lǎaj.
5. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) What sort of person are you? (b) That young man is very skinny. (c) That friend of yours is stupid, isn't he? (d) I'm not a very courageous person. (f) she's not very fat. (g) is she tall?
6. In the sentence khón phūu nìi ḡōo lǎaj, phūu is (a) a noun (b) a verb (c) Vs (d) classifier (e) determiner.
7. In the NP khón cōoj is (a) NP (b) Vs (c) Q (d) modifier of khón (e) none of these.
8. In the VP dii lǎaj, lǎaj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) negative (d) intensifier of dii.

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2, 3b, 4 b, 5 (a) càw pen khón cāṇdaj (b) sáaj nūm phūu nàṇ cōoj lǎaj (c) phyan càw phūu nàṇ ḡōo, mēen bōo (d) khôj bōo pen khón kàa-hǎan lǎaj (e) láaw bōo tuj [ùan] lǎaj (f) láaw sūuj bōo, 6a and d, 7b and d, 8d,

Cycle 9

M - 1

American	khón á-mée-lī-kan	ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນ
<b>Laotian</b>	khón láaw	ຄົນລາວ
Thai	khón tháj	ຄົນໄທ
Cambodian	khón khá-měen	ຄົນຂາມ
Englishman	khón aṅ-kít	ຄົນອັງກິດ
Chinese	khón ciin	ຄົນຈີນ

Is she an American?	láaw pen khón á-mée-lī-kan, mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ອະເມຣິກັນ , ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?
Is he a Laotian?	láaw pen khón láaw, mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ລາວ, ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?
Is he a Thai?	láaw pen khón tháj, mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ໄທ, ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?
Is he a Cambodian?	láaw pen khón khá-měen, mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ຂາມ , ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?
Is he an Englishman?	láaw pen khón aṅ-kít, mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ອັງກິດ, ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?
Is he a Chinese?	láaw pen khón ciin mēen bɔɔ?	ລາວເປັນ ຄົນ ຈີນ , ແມ່ນ ບໍ່?

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

**M-2**

American	khón á-mée-lii-kan	ຄື ອະເມຣິກັນ
Japanese	khón njīi-pūn	ຄື ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ
Vietnamese	khón wīat-náam	ຄື ຫວຽດ າມ
Burmese	khón phā-màa	ຄື ພະມ້າ
French	khón fá-lāṅ	ຄື ຝະລັ່ງ
German	khón jee-lā-mán	ຄື ເຢຍລະມັນ

Yes, he is an American.	mēen lèew, láaw pen khón á-mée-lii-kan.	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ລາວເປັ ຄື ອະເມຣິກັນ .
Yes, he is a Vietnamese	mēen lèew, láaw pen khón wīat-náam.	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ລາວເປັ ຄື ຫວຽດ າມ.
Yes, he is a Burmese.	mēen lèew, láaw pen khón phā-màa	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ລາວເປັ ຄື ພະມ້າ.
Yes, he is a Frenchman.	mēen lèew, láaw pen khón fá-lāṅ	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ລາວເປັ ຄື ຝະລັ່ງ.
Yes, he is a German.	mēen lèew, láaw pen khón jee-lā-mán	ແມ່ ແລ້ວ, ລາວເປັ ຄື ເຢຍລະມັນ

**C-1**

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. Are you an (Englishman)? | A. càw pen khón [aṅ-kít], mēen bōw? |
| B. Yes, I am an Englishman. | B. mēen lèew, khōj pen khón aṅ-kít. |

**C-2**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. Is that (teacher) an Englishman?                             | A. [náaj-khúu] phūu nàan pen khón aṅ-kít, mēen bōw?                                 |
| B. No, that teacher is not an (Englishman). He is an (American) | B. bōw mēen, náaj-khúu phūu nàan bōw pen khón aṅ-kít. láaw pen khón [á-mée-lii-kan] |

NOTES

1) The Noun khón "person" + Name of Country is used to refer to nationals of any country.

2)

Noun	+	Noun
<u>khón</u>		<u>láaw</u>
person		Laos

"a Laotian"

2) pen "be" is a copula Verb (like mēen ) and occurs only in constructions of this type:  
NP + pen + NP.

NP	+	<u>pen</u>	+	NP.
<u>càw</u>		<u>pen</u>		<u>khón láaw</u>

"You are a Lao"

3) Sentences with pen as the liking verb can be converted to questions by adding mēen bōo?. mēen bōo is normally used when asking for confirmation of a fact. The response follows the usual pattern.

Statement:     càw pen khón tháj                                     "You are a Thai."

Question:       càw pen khón tháj, mēen bōo?                     "Are you a Thai?"

Affirmative  
Response:       mēen lèew, [khôj pen khón tháj]             "Yes, I'm Thai."

Negative  
Response:       bōo mēen, khôj pen khón láaw                     "No, I'm a Lao."

APPLICATION

- 1) Answer the following question with the correct information:  
(a) càw sỳy njǎŋ? (b) càw pen khón láaw, mēen bōō?
- 2) Translate the following NP:  
(a) khón aŋ-kit (b) thā-hāan phūu nìi (c) khá-càw  
(d) khón ciin (e) khón láaw phūu nìi.
- 3) In the NP nāk-hían phūu nàŋ, phūu is (a) NP, (b) determiner, (c) a classifier, (d) a question word, (e) it refers to people.
- 4) What would you say to find out if a serviceman you saw was a German?
- 5) In answer to a question you say that your teacher is English.
- 6) You are asked if you are a Thai. You say that you are not, but that you are an American.

---

Answers: 1. Give factual information. 2 (a) Englishman, (b) this serviceman, (c) they, (d) a Chinese, (e) this Lao, 3 (c and e) 4  
thā-hāan phūu nàŋ pen khón jee-lā-mán, mēen bōō?  
5 náaj-khúu khōj pen khón aŋ-kít, 6 bōō mēen, khōj bōō  
pen khón tháj, khōj pen khón á-mée-lī-can

Cycle 10

M - 1

U.S.A.	sá-há-lāt á-mée-liī-kaa	ສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ
Laos	pá-thèet láaw	ປະເທດລາວ
Thailand	pá-thèet tháj	ປະເທດໄທ
Vietnam	pá-thèet wíat-náam	ປະເທດວຽດ າມ
China	pá-thèet ciin	ປະເທດຈີ
England	pá-thèet aṅ-kít	ປະເທດອັງກິດ

He is from the USA.	láaw máa câak sá-há-lāt á-mée-liī-kaa.	ລາວມາຈາກສະຫະຣັດ ອະເມຣິກາ.
He is from Laos.	láaw máa câak pá-thèet láaw.	ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດລາວ.
He is from Thailand.	láaw máa câak pá-thèet tháj.	ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດໄທ.
He is from Vietnam.	láaw máa câak pá-thèet wíat-náam.	ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດ ຫວຽດ າມ.
He is from China.	láaw máa câak pá-thèet ciin.	ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດຈີ .
He is from England.	láaw máa câak pá-thèet aṅ-kít.	ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດ.

M -2

You	càw	ເຈົ້າ
French	fá-lāṅ	ຝະລັ່ງ
This student	nāk-hían phūu nìi	ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ນີ້
That person	khón phūu nà	ຄົ ຜູ້ນັ້ນ
That teacher	náaj-khúu phūu nà	ນາຍຄູຜູ້ນັ້ນ

What country are you from?	càw máa câak pá-thèet daj?	ເຈົ້າມາຈາກປະເທດໃດ?
What country are Frenchmen from?	khón fá-lāṅ máa câak pá-thèet daj?	ຄົນຝະລັ່ງມາຈາກປະເທດໃດ?
What country is this student from?	nāk-hían phūu nìi máa câak pá-thèet daj?	ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ນີ້ມາຈາກປະເທດໃດ?
What country is this person from?	khón phūu nìi máa câak pá-thèet daj?	ຄົນຜູ້ນີ້ມາຈາກປະເທດໃດ?
What country is that teacher from?	náaj-khúu phūu nà máa câak pá-thèet daj?	ນາຍຄູຜູ້ນັ້ນມາຈາກປະເທດໃດ?

C-1

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| A. What country are Americans from? | A. khón á-mée-lī-kan máa câak pá-thèet daj?           |
| B. Americans are from the U.S.A.    | B. khón á-mée-lī-kan máa câak sá-há-lāt á-mée-lī-kaa. |

C-2

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Where are you from? | A. càw máa câak sǎj?            |
| B. I'm from Laos.      | B. khôj máa câak pá-thèet láaw? |

NOTES

- 1) The Main verb (MV) may be composed of two or more individual verbs in a series. The verb máa "to come" (like pa.j "to go" and other verbs of motion) may be followed by verbs showing direction of motion (like câak " (to move) away from").

NP	MV	NP (loc)
<u>khôj</u>	<u>máa</u>	<u>câak</u> <u>sá-há-lāt</u> <u>á-mée-lī-kaa</u>
"I	come came am coming	from the United States."

Since there is no time indication in this sentence, máa may refer to present, past, or future time.

- 2) daj "which" is a question word substitute. It substitutes for the determiners [nìi, nàn], for names, and some other nouns.

Question:      pá-thèet daj?      "Which country?"

Response 1:    pá-thèet ciin      "China"

Response 2:    pá-thèet nìi      "This country."



APPLICATION

- 1) In the sentence, khôj máa câak pá-thèet láaw, máa câak is (a) N, (b) VP, (c) MV, (d) Q, (e) determiner.
- 2) In the sentence above, pá-thèet láaw is (a) VP, (b) Q, (c) NP, (d) Locative, (e) S.
- 3) In the sentence above, the action is (a) in the past, (b) the future, (c) in progress, (d) none of these.
- 4) nāk-hían phūu nìi refers to (a) one person, (b) two persons, (c) more than two, (d) it is unclear.
- 5) In the VP máa câak, câak is (a) NP, (b) V, (c) preposition, (d) VP.
- 6) In the Noun Compound sá-há-lāt á-mée-lī-kaa, sá-há-lāt probably means (a) country, (b) America, (c) United States, (d) nation, (e) none of these.
- 7) China is translated into Lao as (a) ciin, (b) ciin pá-thèet, (c) pá-thèet ciin, (d) phūu ciin.
- 8) "This teacher of mine" would be translated into Lao as:  
(a) náaj-khúu càw nìi, (b) náaj-khúu phūu nìi khôj,  
(c) náaj-khúu khôj phūu nìi, (d) náaj-khúu càw phūu nìi.

---

Answers: 1. c, 2. c and d, 3. a and c, 4. a, 5. b, 6. c, 7. c, 8. c

Cycle 11

M-1

Vientiane	mýaη wíaη-can	ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ
Sekong province	khǔεη sée-kooη	ແຂວງເຊກອງ
Washington	mýaη wóo-sín-tan	ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ
Minnesota	lāt mínísóotaa	ລັດມິນິໂຊຕາ
California	lāt kháalíifóonía	ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ
Sikhay village	bàan sǐi-kháj	ບ້ານ ສີໄຄ
Houa-phan province	khǔεη hǔa-phán	ແຂວງຫົວພັນ
Keun village	bàan ken	ບ້ານ ເກີ

Where is Vientiane?	mýaη wíaη-can jūu sǎj?	ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ ຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is Sekong province?	khǔεη sée-kooη jūu sǎj?	ແຂວງເຊກອງຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is Washington?	mýaη wóosín-tan jūu sǎj?	ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ ຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is the state of Minnesota?	lāt mínísóotaa jūu sǎj?	ລັດມິນິໂຊຕາຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is the state of California?	lāt kháalíifóonía jūu sǎj?	ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ ຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is the village of Sikhay?	bàan sǐi-kháj jūu sǎj?	ບ້ານ ສີໄຄຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is the province of Houa-phan?	khǔεη hǔa-phán jūu sǎj?	ແຂວງຫົວພັນ ຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is the village of Ban Keun?	bàan ken jūu sǎj?	ບ້ານ ເກີ ຢູ່ໃສ?

M-2

The city of Vientiane	mýaṅ wíṅ-can	ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ
The province of Sekong	khǔeṅ sée-kooṅ	ແຂວງເຊກອງ
Washington, D.C.	mýaṅ wóosìṅtan	ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ
The village of Sikhay	bàan sǐi-kháj	ບ້ານ ສີໄຄ
State of California	lāt kháalifóonía	ຮັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ
Hanoi	mýaṅ hàa-nôoj	ເມືອງຮ່າໂຫຍ
Houa-phan	khǔeṅ hǔa-phán	ແຂວງຫົວພັນ

The city of Vientiane is in Laos.	mýaṅ wíṅ-can jūu náj pá-thèet láaw.	ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ ຢູ່ໃນ ປະເທດລາວ.
The province of Sekong is in Laos.	khǔeṅ sée-kooṅ jūu náj pá-thèet láaw.	ແຂວງເຊກອງຢູ່ໃນ ປະເທດລາວ.
Washington, D.C. is in the U.S.A.	mýaṅ wóosìṅtan jūu náj sá-há-lāt áméelikaa.	ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ ຢູ່ໃນ ສະຫະຣັດອະເມລິກາ.
The Sikhay village is in Vientiane.	bàan sǐi-kháj jūu náj mýaṅ wíṅ-can.	ບ້ານ ສີໄຄຢູ່ໃນ ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ .
The State of California is in the U.S.A.	lāt kháalifóonía jūu náj sá-há-lāt á-mée-lī-kaa.	ຮັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍຢູ່ໃນ ສະຫະຣັດອະເມລິກາ.
Hanoi is in Vietnam.	mýaṅ hàa-nôoj jūu náj pá-thèet wíat-náam.	ເມືອງຮ່າໂຫຍ ຢູ່ໃນ ປະເທດວຽດນາມ.
Samneua is in the province of Houa-phan.	mýaṅ sám-nýa jūu náj khǔeṅ hǔa-phán.	ເມືອງຊຳເໜືອຢູ່ໃນ ແຂວງຫົວພັນ .

**C-1**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. Where is the Nathong village?                         | A. bàan náa-thóoŋ jūu sǎj?                 |
| B. The village of Nathong is in the city of Phonhong.    | B. bàan náa-thóoŋ jūu náj mýaŋ phóon-hóoŋ. |
| A. Where is the city of Phonhong?                        | A. mýaŋ phóon-hóoŋ jūu sǎj?                |
| B. The city of Phonhong is in the province of Vientiane. | B. mýaŋ phóon-hóoŋ jūu náj khǔeŋ wíaŋ-can. |
| A. Where is the province of Vientiane?                   | A. khǔeŋ wíaŋ-can jūu sǎj?                 |
| B. The province of Vientiane is in Laos.                 | B. khǔeŋ wíaŋ-can jūu náj pá-thèet láaw.   |

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Where is your school?                          | A. hóoŋ-hían càw jūu sǎj?                        |
| B. My school is in Arlington.                     | B. hóoŋ-hían khôj jūu náj mýaŋ áalíŋtán          |
| A. Where is Arlington?                            | A. mýaŋ áalíŋtán jūu sǎj?                        |
| B. Arlington is in the State of Virginia.         | B. mýaŋ áalíŋtán jūu náj lāt wéecíinía.          |
| A. Where is the State of Virginia?                | A. lāt wéecíinía jūu sǎj?                        |
| B. The State of Virginia is in the United States. | B. lāt wéecíinía jūu náj sá-há-lāt á-mée-li-kaa. |

NOTES

- 1) This sentence type may be used to indicate deographical location:

NP            +            jūu            +            LOC

mýaη sám-nýa      jūu náj            khǔeη hǔa-phán

"Sam Neua is located in the province of Houaphan."

- 2) The verb jūu "to be located in" is followed by Locatives (LOC). The term "locative" refers to place expressions. It includes NP, Prep. + NP, and Adverbs of Place.
- 3) In questions LOC is replaced by sǎj "Where (at)?"
- 4) bàan "village", mýaη "city", and khǔeη "province" are all political and administrative divisions in Laos.

APPLICATION

- 1) Answer these questions giving correct information :
- (a) mýaη wíaη-can jūu sǎj
- (b) mýaη hàa-nôoj jūu náj pá-thèet wíat-náam, mēeη boo?
- 2) Provide a possible question to each of these answers:
- (a) bōo mēeη, láaw si paj hóoη-héem.
- (b) khǔeη khám-mūan jūu náj pá-thèet láaw.
- (c) mēem lèew, phùak-háw pen khón njīi-pūn.
- (d) câak pá-thèet á-mée-li-kaa.

---

Answers:

1(a) jūu náj pá-thèet láaw (b) mēeη lèew

2(a) láaw si paj hóoη-hían, mēeη boo (b) khǔeη khám-mūan jūu sǎj (c) phùak-háw pen khón njīi-pūn mēeη boo (d) láaw máa câak pá-thèet daj

3) Fill in the blanks with the correct word:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ wían-can jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw.  
 (b) lāt níw-jóok jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_ á-mée-lī-kaa.  
 (c) \_\_\_\_\_ náa-thóon jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_ phóon-hóon.  
 (d) \_\_\_\_\_ wían-can jūu náj \_\_\_\_\_ láaw.

**CYCLE 12**

**M-1**

To have one's meal	kin khâw	ກິ ເຂົ້າ
To do work	hēt-wiæk	ເຮັດວຽກ
To read	āan năṅ-sǎy	ອ່າ ຫ້າງສີ
To write	khǎan năṅ-sǎy	ຂຽ ຫ້າງສີ
To study language	hían pháa-sǎa	ຮຽ ພາສາ
To teach language	sǎon pháa-sǎa	ສອ ພາສາ
To cook	khúa-kin	ຄົວກິ

I am having my meal.	khôj kin khâw.	ຂ້ອຍກິ ເຂົ້າ.
He works.	láaw hēt-wiæk.	ລາວເຮັດວຽກ.
We read.	phùak-háw āan năṅ-sǎy.	ພວກເຮົາອ່າ ຫ້າງສີ.
They write.	khá-càw khǎan năṅ-sǎy.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າຂຽ ຫ້າງສີ.
You study language.	càw hían pháa-sǎa.	ເຈົ້າຮຽ ພາສາ.
The teacher teaches the language.	náaj-khúu sǎon pháa-sǎa.	າຍຄູສອ ພາສາ.
Malivanh cooks.	náan mā-líi-wán khúa-kin.	າງມາລີວັ ຄົວກິ .

**Answers:**

3(a) mýan/pá-thèet (b) sá-há-rāt (c) bàn, mýan (d) khǎn/pá-thèet

M- 2

To do	hēt	ເຮັດ
To buy	sỳy	ຊື້
To look at	bēn	ເບິ່ງ
To see	hěn	ເຫັນ
To look for	sòok-hăa	ຊອກຫາ
To fix, repair	pεεn	ແປງ

What are you doing?	càw hēt njǎn?	ເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What are you buying?	càw sỳy njǎn?	ເຈົ້າຊື້ຫຍັງ?
What are you looking at?	càw bēn njǎn?	ເຈົ້າເບິ່ງຫຍັງ?
What are you seeing?	càw hěn njǎn?	ເຈົ້າເຫັນ ຫຍັງ?
What are you looking for?	càw sòok-hăa njǎn?	ເຈົ້າຊອກຫາຫຍັງ?
What are you fixing?	càw pεεn njǎn?	ເຈົ້າແປງຫຍັງ?

C-1

- |                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| A. What are you doing? | A. càw hēt njǎn?  |
| B. I am working.       | B. khôj hēt-wiak. |

NOTES

- 1) kin "to eat", hēt "to do, work", and āan "to read" are action verbs that require NP complements.

NP	+	V	+	NP
<u>khôj</u>		<u>kin</u>		<u>khâw</u>
(I		eat		rice)

"I'm having a meal."

The NP complement can be replaced by njǎŋ in questions:

Question: càw hían njǎŋ "What are you studying?"

Answer: khôj hían pháa-sǎa láaw "Lao."

- 2) bēŋ means "to look at (something or someone)" hěŋ means to see, perceive".
- 3) Both sòok and hǎa separately mean "to look for something":  
sòok-khǎa has the same meaning. Combinations of two verbs with the same or similar meaning are very common in Lao.
- 4) khúa-kin is the usual verb compound for "the cooking of food."
- 5) In VP hēt wìak, wìak means "work (in general)" and hēt means "to do, make". hēt-wìak means "to have a job" or "to be working on something".

### APPLICATION

- 1) In the sentence làaw hēt-wìak, wìak is (a) subject (b) VP (c) NP (d) complement to verb hēt.
- 2) A possible answer to the question càw hēt njǎŋ is (a) bōo mēen, (b) bōo hēt, (c) khôj kin khâw, (d) bōo njǎŋ.
- 3) A possible answer to the question láaw hían njǎŋ would be (a) pháa-sǎa láaw, (b) bōo hían, (c) láaw hían pháa-sǎa aŋ-kít, (d) bōo pen njǎŋ.
- 4) In the sentence náaj-khúu sǒon pháa-sǎa, sǒon is (a) MV, (b) Subject, (c) NP complement, (d) classifier.

---

Answers: 1. c and d, 2. c, 3. a and c, 4. a,



- 5) Complete the following sentences: a) láaw āan....., (b) khǒj paj hēt....., (c) khá-càw kin..... (d) càw hían.....
- 6) Translate the following sentences into English:  
(a) càw sòok-hǎa khán hōm boo, (b) càw sòok-hǎa njǎn,  
(c) láaw si pεεη hían láaw, (d) khôj hěn thā-hǎan phūu nàn,  
(e) phúak-háw sỳy múak jūu tá-lâat.

---

Answers:

7. (a) nǎj-sỳy, (b) wìak, (c) khâw, (d) pháa-sǎa (láaw, etc.),  
6. (a) Are you looking for the umbrella? (b) What are you looking for? (c) He will repair his house. (d) I see that soldier. (e) We bought a hat at the market.

Cycle 13

M-1

To eat	kin	ກິ
To sit	nāṅ	ນັ່ງ
To chat	lóm-kan	ລົມກັ
To take pictures	thāaj-hùup	ຖ່າຍຮູບ
To hide	lìi	ລີ້

Where are we going to eat? Here?	háv si kin jūu sǎj? jūu nìi bɔɔ?	ເຮົາສິກິ ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່?
Where are we going to sit? Here?	háv si nāṅ jūu sǎj? jūu nìi bɔɔ?	ເຮົາສິນັ່ງຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່?
Where are we going to chat? Here?	háv si lóm-kan jūu sǎj? jūu nìi bɔɔ?	ເຮົາສິລົມກັ ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່?
Where are we going to take pictures? Here?	háv si thāaj-hùup jūu sǎj? jūu nìi bɔɔ?	ເຮົາສິຖ່າຍຮູບຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່?
Where are we going to hide? Here?	háv si paj lìi jūu sǎj? jūu nìi bɔɔ?	ເຮົາສິໄປລີ້ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ນີ້ບໍ່?

M-2

To eat	kin	ກິ
To stand	jjyn	ຢື
To wait	thâa	ຖ້າ
To smoke	sûup jaa	ສູບຢາ
To rest	sáw-m̄yaj	ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ

No. Let's go eat there.	bōo, paj kin jūu hân thō!	ບໍ່, ໄປກິນຢູ່ຫີນເທາະ!
No. Let's go stand there!	bōo, paj jjyn jūu hân thō!	ບໍ່, ໄປຢືນຢູ່ຫີນເທາະ!
No. Let's go wait there!	bōo, paj thâa jūu hân thō!	ບໍ່, ໄປຖ້າຢູ່ຫີນເທາະ!
No. Let's go smoke there!	bōo, paj sūupjaa jūu hân thō!	ບໍ່, ໄປສູບຢາຢູ່ຫີນເທາະ!
No. Let's go rest there!	bōo, paj sáw-m̄yaj jūu hân thō!	ບໍ່, ໄປເຊົາເມື່ອຍຢູ່ຫີນເທາະ!

C-1

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. Where are you going to rest?<br>Here? | A. càw si sáw-m̄yaj jūu sǎj?<br>jūu nìi bōo? |
| B. No. I'm going to rest there.          | B. bōo, khôj si paj sáw-m̄yaj<br>jūu hân.    |

C-2

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Where are we going to wait<br>for him? Here? | A. háw si thâa láaw jūu sǎj?<br>jūu nìi bōo? |
| B. No. Let's go wait for him there!             | B. bōo, paj thâa láaw jūu hân<br>thō!        |

NOTES

- 1) After jūu or Verbs of Motion (paj, máa, etc.) nìi means "here"; hân "there".
- 2) The particle thō occurs at the end of sentences, which "urge" or "suggest" a particular course of action.

APPLICATION

- 1) Complete the following sentences:
  - (a) láaw bōo jūu hân. láaw jūu \_\_\_\_\_
  - (b) jūu nìi bōo? bōo jūu \_\_\_\_\_
  - (c) jūu \_\_\_\_\_? jūu nìi bōo?
- 2) Change the following statements into suggestion for action:
  - (a) paj jynn jūu hân \_\_\_\_\_
  - (b) paj kin khâw \_\_\_\_\_
  - (c) paj thāaj hùup \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Complete the following sentences (Using the English cue word):
  - (a) paj \_\_\_\_\_ jūu sǎj (hide),
  - (b) háv si lóm-kan jūu \_\_\_\_\_ (where?)
  - (c) paj sáv-mýaj jūu \_\_\_\_\_ thō (there).
  - (d) bōo paj \_\_\_\_\_ jūu hân thō (wait)
  - (e) \_\_\_\_\_ nìi bōo? (here?)
  - (f) nāṇ jūu hân \_\_\_\_\_ (Let's...)

---

Answers: 1) (a) nìi, (b) hân, (c) sǎj, 2) (a) thō, (b) thō, (c) thō,  
3) (a) lìi, (b) sǎj, (c) hân, (d) thāa, (e) jūu, (f) thō

Cycle 14

M-1

To stay	phāk	ພັກ
To work	hēt kaan	ເຮັດກາ
To have one's hair cut	tát-phǒm	ຕັດຜົມ
To make a phone call	thóo-lā-sáp	ໂທລະສັບ
To play	lîn	ຫລິ້ນ
To listen to the radio	fáŋ wīt-thā-njū?	ຟັງວິທຍຸ

Where is he staying?	láaw phāk jūu sǎj?	ລາວພັກຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is he working?	láaw hēt kaan jūu sǎj?	ລາວເຮັດກາ ຢູ່ໃສ?
Where did he have his hair cut?	láaw tát-phǒm jūu sǎj?	ລາວຕັດຜົມຢູ່ໃສ?
Where did he make the phone call?	láaw thóo-lā-sáp jūu sǎj?	ລາວໂທລະສັບຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is he playing?	láaw lîn jūu sǎj?	ລາວຫລິ້ນຢູ່ໃສ?
Where did he listen to the radio?	láaw fáŋ wīt-thā-njū? jūu sǎj?	ລາວຟັງວິທຍຸຢູ່ໃສ?

**M-2**

My house	hýan khôj	ເຮືອ ຂ້ອຍ
The barber shop	hàan tát-phǒm	ຮ້າ ຕັດຜົມ
The yard of the house	dǎen-bàan	ເດີ່ນບ້ານ
The meeting room	hóvng pá-súm	ຫ້ອງປະຊຸມ
The post office	hóvng-sǎaj	ໂຮງສາຍ

He is staying in my house.	láaw phāk jūu hýan khôj.	ລາວພັກຢູ່ເຮືອ ຂ້ອຍ.
He has his hair cut at the barbershop.	láaw tát phôm jūu hàan tát-phǒm.	ລາວຕັດຜົມຢູ່ຮ້າ ຕັດຜົມ.
He is playing in the yard of the house.	láaw lín jūu dēn-bàan.	ລາວຫລິ້ນຢູ່ເດີ່ນບ້ານ.
He listened to it in the meeting room.	láaw fávng jūu hóvng pá-súm.	ລາວຟັງຢູ່ຫ້ອງປະຊຸມ.

**C-1**

- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| A. Where is he staying?      | A. láaw phāk jūu sǎj?        |
| B. He is staying at a hotel. | B. láaw phāk jūu hóvng-héem. |

**C-2**

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| A. Where is your friend?            | A. phýan càw jūu sǎj?                   |
| B. He is at a hotel.                | B. láaw jūu hóvng-héem.                 |
| A. Is he staying at the hotel?      | A. láaw phāk jūu hóvng-héem bɔɔ?        |
| B. Yes, he is staying at the hotel. | B. mēen lèew, láaw phāk jūu hóvng-héem. |

NOTES

- 1) The verb Phrase jūu+ Locative is frequently combined with sentences to indicate location of some activity.

Sentence + jūu + LOC

láaw phāk jūu hýan khôj

"He is staying at my house."

láaw fán wī-thā-njū jūu hôn pá-súm

"He listened to the radio in the meeting room."

sǎj can replace the Locative in this construction in questions:

láaw phāk jūu sǎj?

"Where is he staying?"

láaw fán wī-thā-njū jūu sǎj?

"Where did he listen to the radio?"

APPLICATION

- 1) In the sentence láaw phāk jūu h́yan khôj, h́yan khôj is (a) VP, (b) NP, (c) VM, (d) N
- 2) In the above sentence, jūu is (a) NP, (b) preposition, (c) verb, (d) locative, (e) none of these.
- 3) In the above sentence, jūu h́yan khôj indicates (a) subject, (b) location, (c) negative, (d) none of these.
- 4) Complete the following sentences:
  - (a) ...jūu hàn tát-phǒm,
  - (b) láaw lín...dēn bàn,
  - (c) láaw sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek jūu...,
  - (d) láaw...wīt-thā-njū|jūu sǎj,
  - (e) láaw...jūu hóoŋ-héem,
  - (f) khôj si...jūu tùu...sǎa-tháa-lā-nā
- 5) Answer the following questions:
  - (a) láaw lín jūu sǎj?
  - (b) láaw fáj wī-thā-njū| jūu sǎj?
  - (c) càw hían pháa-sǎa láaw jūu sǎj?
  - (d) láaw tát-phǒm jūu sǎj?
  - (e) láaw thóo-lā-sáp jūu sǎj?

---

Answers: 1) (b), 2) (b), 3) (b), 4) (a) tát-phǒm, (b) jūu, (c) hóoŋ-sǎaj (d) fáj, (e) phāk, (f) thóo-lā-sáp... thóo-lā-sáp, 5) (a) jūu dēn-bàn, etc. (b) jūu hóoŋ-héem (jūu h́yan láaw, etc.), (c) jūu hóoŋ-hían, (d) jūu hàn tát-phǒm, (e) jūu tùu-thóo-lā-sáp sǎa-tháa-lā-nā).



Cycle 15

M-1

To go to eat	paj kin khâw	ໄປກິ ເຂົ້າ
To come to work	máa hētkaan	ມາເຮັດກາ
To come to attend the meeting	máa pásúm	ມາປະຊຸມ
To make a phone call	paj thóolāsáp	ໄປໂທລະສັບ
To come to look for	máa sòok-hǎa	ມາຊອກຫາ
To go and look at	paj bōng	ໄປເບິ່ງ

He is going to eat at the restaurant.	láaw si paj kin khâw jūu hǎan aa-hǎan.	ລາວສິໄປກິ ເຂົ້າຢູ່ ຮ້າ ອາຫາ .
He is coming to work in this office building.	láaw si máa hēt-kaan jūu hóong-kaan nìi.	ລາວສິມາເຮັດກາ ຢູ່ໂຮງການນີ້.
He is coming to attend a meeting in the conference room.	láaw si máa pá-súm jūu hóong pá-súm.	ລາວສິມາປະຊຸມຢູ່ ຫ້ອງປະຊຸມ.
He is going to go and make a phone call in his office.	láaw si paj thóo-lā-sáp jūu hóong-kaan láaw.	ລາວສິໄປໂທລະສັບຢູ່ ຫ້ອງກາ ລາວ.
He came to look for you at school.	láaw máa sòok-hǎa càw jūu hóong-hían.	ລາວມາຊອກຫາເຈົ້າ ຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ .
He went to see the military post in the state of California.	láaw paj bōng khàaj thā- hǎan jūu lāt khālīfōonia.	ລາວໄປເບິ່ງຄ້າຍທະຫານ ຢູ່ຮັດກາລີໂຟເນຍ.

M - 2

Where      sǎj      ໃສ?  
 What      njǎṅ      ຫຍັງ?

What is he going to do at the barbershop?	láaw si paj hēt njǎṅ jūu hàn tát-phǒm?	ລາວສິໄປເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່ຮ້າ ຕັດຜົມ?
What is he coming to do here?	láaw si máa hēt njǎṅ jūu nìi?	ລາວສິມາເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່ນີ້?
What is he going to go and do there?	láaw si paj hēt njǎṅ jūu hân?	ລາວສິໄປເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່ຫ້າມ?

C-1

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. What are you going to do at the barbershop? | A. càw si paj hēt njǎṅ jūu hàn tát-phǒm? |
| B. I am going to have my hair cut.             | B. khôj si paj tát-phǒm.                 |

C-2

- |                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. Where are you going?            | A. càw si paj sǎj?              |
| B. I am going to the restaurant.   | B. khôj si paj hàn aa-hǎan      |
| A. What are you going to do there? | A. càw si paj hēt njǎṅ jūu hân? |
| B. I am going to eat.              | B. khôj si paj kin-khâw         |

NOTES

- 1) paj "to go" and máa "to come" may be following by a VP indicating an activity ( kin khâw, etc.) This may be followed by jūu + LOC indicating the location.

NP + si paj + activity + Location

láaw si paj kin khâw jūu hàn aa-hǎan

"He is going to eat at the restaurant."

This sentence is made up of 3 basic underlying sentences:

(1) láaw si paj.....

(2) [láaw] kin khâw

(3) [láaw] jūu hàn aa-hǎan

In questions the VP indicating Activity can be replaced by hēt njǎn "do what?": the VP of Location by jūu sǎj.

Statement: láaw si paj kin khâw jūu hàn aa-hǎan

Question

(Activity): láaw si paj hēt njǎn [jūu hàn aa-hǎan]?

Question

(Location): láaw si paj kin khâw jūu sǎj?

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj sòok-hǎa pỳm láaw jūu hóoŋ-mǎo.  
sòok-hǎa pỳm is a VP indicating (a) location (b) time (c) activity (d) actor (e) none of these.  
jūu hóoŋ-mǎo is a VP indicating (a) purpose (b) location (c) subject (d) time.  
si paj indicates (a) past time (b) future time (c) present time (d) indefinite time.
2. In the sentence láaw máa sòok-hǎa càw jūu hóoŋ-hían the time of the action is probably (a) present (b) future (c) past (d) future or present.
3. What are the 3 underlying sentences of the following sentence: láaw si paj sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek jūu hóoŋ-sǎaj  
(a) \_\_\_\_\_  
(b) \_\_\_\_\_  
(c) \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3 (a) láaw si paj ... (b) [láaw] sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek  
(d) [láaw] jūu hóoŋ-sǎaj

4. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) láaw si paj sòok-hǎa pỳm càw

---

(b) khôj paj bēŋ wīt-thā-njū? jūu hàn aa-hǎan

---

(c) láaw si bōo paj hēt wìak jūu mýaŋ síaŋ-māj

---

(d) láaw máa hēt njǎŋ jūu hôoŋ pá-súm

---

(e) càw si paj sỳy sỳa-fǒn jūu sǎj

---

(f) phǎj máa lín jūu dēn bàn càw

---

- 
- Answers:4 (a) He is going to look for your book.  
(b) I went to look at the radio at the restaurant.  
(c) He will not go work in Chiangmai.  
(d) What did he come to do at the meeting?  
(e) Where will you buy a raincoat?  
(f) Who came to play in your yard?

Cycle 16

M-1

To come here	máa nîi	ມານີ້
To go there	paj hân	ໄປທ່ານ
To come over here	máa phîi	ມາພີ້
To go over there	paj phùn	ໄປພູ້

He is coming here.	láaw si máa nîi	ລາວສິມານີ້.
He is going there.	láaw si paj hân	ລາວສິໄປທ່ານ.
He is coming over here.	láaw si máa phîi	ລາວສິມາພີ້.
He is going over there.	láaw si paj phùn	ລາວສິໄປພູ້ .

C-1

- |                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. Is he coming here?     | A. láaw si máa nîi bōō?  |
| B. No. He is going there. | B. bōō. láaw si paj hân. |

C-2

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Are you going over there? | A. càw si paj phùn bōō?   |
| B. No. I'm coming over here. | B. bōō. khôj si máa phîi. |

NOTES

- Both nîi and phîi refer to space near at hand, but nîi is more specific (right here!) and phîi is more general ("over here"). nîi is more likely to be used in comands, such as máa nîi "come here."
- hân means "there". phùn means "way over there."

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw si máa...(or)... (b) láaw si paj... (or)...
  
2. Translate the following sentences into Lao :
  - (a) Come here! (Command).
  - (b) Go over there!
  - (c) Go way over there!
  - (d) Come over here!
  
3.
  - (a) What would you say if you wanted to indicate that something was in the same room with you but was about 8 feet away?
  
  - (b) What would you say if you wanted someone to come over in your general area but not right close to you?
  
  - (c) If you were asked where someone was, what would you say to indicate that he was a considerable distance away but still visible?
  
  - (d) If you were asked where someone was, how would you indicate that he wasn't near you?

---

Answers: 1. (a) nîi or phîi, (a) hân or phùn, 2. (a) máa nîi, (b) paj hân, (c) paj phùn, (d) máa phîi, 3. (a) jūu hân, (b) máa phîi, (c) jūu phùn, (d) láaw bōo jūu nîi.

Cycle 17

M-1

American Embassy	sá-thǎan-thùut á-mée-lii-kan	ສະຖາ ທູດອະເມຣິກັນ
His house	hýan láaw	ເຮືອ ລາວ
This cinema, theater	hóonj sǐi-née nìi	ໂຮງຊີເນີ, ໂຮງຮູບເງົານີ້
Barbershop	hàan tát-phǒm	ຮ້າ ຕັດຜົມ
Radio station	sá-thǎa-níi wī-thā-njū	ສະຖາວິທະຍຸ

Do you know the way to the American Embassy?	càw hùu thǎaŋ paj sá-thǎan-thùut á-mée-lii-kan bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ທາງໄປສະຖາ ທູດອະເມຣິກັນ ບໍ?
Do you know the way to his house?	càw hùu thǎaŋ paj hýan láaw bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ທາງໄປເຮືອ ລາວບໍ?
Do you know the way to the movie house?	càw hùu thǎaŋ paj hóonj sǐi-née bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ທາງໄປໂຮງຊີເນີ ບໍ?
Do you know the way to the barbershop?	càw hùu thǎaŋ paj hàan tát-phǒm bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ທາງໄປຮ້າ ຕັດຜົມບໍ?
Do you know the way to the Radio station?	càw hùu thǎaŋ paj sá-thǎa-níi wī-thā-njū bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ທາງໄປສະຖາວິທະຍຸບໍ?



**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

**M- 2**

Turn left	lìaw sàaj	ລ້ວງຂ້າຍ
Turn right	lìaw khwǎa	ລ້ວງຂວາ
Go straight ahead	paj s̄y-s̄y	ໄປຊື່ໆ
Turn right then go straight	lìaw khwǎa lèɛw paj s̄y-s̄y	ລ້ວງຂວາແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ
No	bōw	ບໍ່

Yes (I know), turn left on the next street.	hùu, lìaw sàaj jūu thá-nǒn nâa.	ຮູ້, ລ້ວງຂ້າຍຢູ່ຖົ່ງ ຫ າ.
Yes, turn right on the next street.	hùu, lìaw khwǎa jūu thá-nǒn nâa.	ຮູ້, ລ້ວງຂວາຢູ່ຖົ່ງ ຫ າ.
Yes, go straight ahead on this street.	hùu, paj s̄y-s̄y taam thá-nǒn nìi.	ຮູ້, ໄປຊື່ໆຕາມຖິ່ນນີ້.
Yes, turn right on Lane-Xang street then go straight.	hùu, lìaw khwǎa jūu thá-nǒn làan sàaṅ lèɛw paj s̄y-s̄y.	ຮູ້, ລ້ວງຂວາຢູ່ຖົ່ງ ລ້ານຊ້າງແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ.
No, I don't know.	bōw, khôj bōw hùu.	ບໍ່, ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້.

**C-1**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Do you know the way to the barbershop? | A. càw hùu tháaṅ paj hàn tát-phǒm bōw? |
| B. Yes, turn left on the next street.     | B. hùu, lìaw sàaj jūu thá-nǒn nâa.     |

NOTES

- 1) The noun tháaŋ "way, direction" can be followed by Verb Phrase "modifiers", such as paj hýan láaw "go to his house" indicating "destination". The whole construction tháaŋ + VP is a Noun phrase and may serve as the NP complement of a verb, such as hùu "to know".

NP	+	MV	+	NP
<u>khôj</u>		<u>hùu</u>		<u>tháaŋ paj hóoŋ síi-née</u>
(I		know		way go building cinema)

"I know the way to the movies."

- 2) Where English uses Verb+Adverbials or Preposition+Noun Phrase to indicate directions and locations, Lao normally has Verb + Verb or Verb + VP, as in the following examples:

(1) English : Verb + Adverbial

Turn left/right.

Lao: Verb + Verb

lìaw sàaj/khwǎa

(2) English: Verb + Adverbial + Preposition - NP

Go straight ahead on this street.

Lao: Verb + Verb + Preposition - NP

paj sýy sýy taam thá-nõn nìi

- 3) The affirmative response to bōō type (Yes-No) questions is repetition of the Verb: the negative response is bōō, bōō + Verb.

NP + MV + Complement + Question

càw hùu tháaŋ paj tá-lâat bōō

"Do you know the way to the market?"

Affirmative

Response: hùu, [lìaw sàaj jūu thá-nǎn nâa]

"Yes, I do. (turn left at the next block.)"

Negative

Response: bōo, [khôj] bōo hùu

"No, I don't."

The negative is normally followed by another sentence supplying additional information.

### APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hùu tháan paj hyan caw, paj hyan caw is (a) the predicate, (b) VP, (c) "modifier" of tháan, (d) NP, (e) Verb.
2. In the above sentence tháan paj hyan caw is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) predicate, (d) complement of verb hùu, (e) subject of the sentence.
3. In the sentence lìaw sàaj (a) both lìaw and sàaj are verbs, b) sàaj is an adjective, (c) neither is a verb, (d) only lìaw is a verb.
4. In the sentence paj syy syy taam thá-nǎn nìi, taam is (a) a preposition, (b) NP, (c) verb, (d) VP, (e) particle, (f) it means "to follow or go along".
5. Complete the following sentences; (a) lìaw ..... jūu thá-nǎn nâa, (b) ..... syy syy, (c) bōo, khôj .... hùu, (d) ... khwǎa jūu thá-nǎn làn-saan (e) caw hùu tháan ... hyan láaw bōo, (f) hùu, paj ... .. taam ..... nìi.

---

Answers: 1. a, 2. a and d, 3. a, 4. c and f, 5. (a) sàaj/khwǎa, (b) paj, (c) bōo, (d) lìaw, (e) paj, (f) syy syy...thá-nǎn

Cycle 18

M-1

This woman	phūu-njín phūu nìi	ຜູ້ຍິງຜູ້ນີ້
This man	phūu-sáaj phūu nìi	ຜູ້ຊາຍຜູ້ນີ້
This child	dék-nòoj phūu nìi	ເດັກນ້ອຍຜູ້ນີ້
My younger brother	nòoj-sáaj khôj	້ອງຊາຍຂ້ອຍ
My younger sister	nòoj-săaw khôj	້ອງສາວຂ້ອຍ
My older brother	àaj khôj	້ອາຍຂ້ອຍ
His parents	phōo-mēε láaw	ພໍ່ແມ່ລາວ
My older sister	yàj khôj	ເອື້ອຍຂ້ອຍ
My child	lùuk khôj	ລູກຂ້ອຍ
My son	lùuk-sáaj khôj	ລູກຊາຍຂ້ອຍ

Do you know this woman?	càw hùu-cák phūu-njín phūu nìi bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກຜູ້ຍິງຜູ້ນີ້ບໍ່?
Do you know this man?	càw hùu-cák phūu-sáaj phūu nìi bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກຜູ້ຊາຍຜູ້ນີ້ບໍ່?
Do you know this child?	càw hùu-cák dék-nòoj phūu nìi bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກເດັກ ັອຍ ຜູ້ນີ້ບໍ່?
Do you know my younger brother?	càw hùu-cák nòoj- sáaj khôj bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກ ັອງຊາຍ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່?
Do you know my younger sister?	càw hùu-cák nòoj- săaw khôj bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກ ັອງສາວ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່?
Do you know my brother?	càw hùu-cák àaj khôj bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກອ້າຍຂ້ອຍບໍ່?
Do you know his parents?	càw hùu-cák phōo- mēε láaw bōw?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກພໍ່ແມ່ລາວບໍ່?

continued ...

Do you know my sister?	càw hùu-cák yàj khôj bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກເອື້ອຍຂ້ອຍບໍ່?
Do you know my child?	càw hùu-cák lùuk khôj bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກລູກຂ້ອຍບໍ່?
Do you know my son?	càw hùu-cák lùuk-sáaj khôj bɔɔ?	ເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກລູກຊາຍ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່?

M -2

Your office	hóon-kaan càw	ໂຮງກາ ເຈົ້າ
Inpeng temple	wāt in-pɛɛŋ	ວັດອີ ແປງ
The club	sá-móo-sǎɔn	ສະໂມສອນ
On the train	náj lōt-fáj	ໃ ລົດໄຟ
At the party	náj nǎan kin-liàn	ໃ ງາ ກິ ລິ້ງ

Yes, I met him at your office.	hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu hóon-kaan càw.	ຮູ້, ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວຢູ່ ໂຮງກາ ເຈົ້າ.
Yes, I met her at the Inpeng temple.	hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu wāt in-pɛɛŋ.	ຮູ້, ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວ ຢູ່ວັດອີ ແປງ.
Yes, I met her at the club.	hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu sá-móo-sǎɔn.	ຮູ້, ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວ ຢູ່ສະໂມສອນ .
Yes, I met him on the train.	hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu náj lōt-fáj.	ຮູ້, ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວຢູ່ ໃ ລົດໄຟ.
Yes, I met her at the party.	hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu náj nǎan kin-liàn.	ຮູ້, ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວຢູ່ ໃ ງາ ກິ ລິ້ງ.

M-3

Husband	phũa	ຜົວ
Wife	mía	ເມັງ
Father-in-law	phōw-thâw	ພໍ່ເຖົ້າ
Mother-in-law	mēε-thâw	ແມ່ເຖົ້າ
Father-in-law	phōw-pūu	ພໍ່ປູ່
Mother-in-law	mēε-njāa	ແມ່ຢ່າ
Daughter	lùuk-sǎaw	ລູກສາວ

I'll get to meet her husband.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp phũa láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບຜົວລາວ.
I'll get to meet his wife.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp mía láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບເມັງລາວ.
I'll get to meet his father-in-law.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp phōw thâw láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບພໍ່ເຖົ້າລາວ.
I'll get to meet his mother-in-law.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp mēε-thâw láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບແມ່ເຖົ້າລາວ.
I'll get to meet her father-in-law.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp phōw-pūu láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບພໍ່ປູ່ລາວ.
I'll get to meet her mother-in-law.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp mēε njāa láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບແມ່ຢ່າລາວ.
I'll get to meet her daughter.	khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp lùuk-sǎaw láaw.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄດ້ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລູກສາວລາວ.

C-1

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. Do you know this woman?             | A. càw hùu-cák phūu njíng phūu nìi boov?            |
| B. Yes, I met her at the Inpeng temple | B. hùu, khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu wāt in-peεng. |

**C-2**

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| A. Where did you meet her? | A. càw dàj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu sǎj?    |
| B. I met her at school.    | B. khôj hùu-cák káp láaw jūu hóoŋ-hían. |

**C-3**

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| A. Do you know his wife?      | A. càw hùu-cák mía láaw bōo?                |
| B. No, I don't know her.      | B. bōo, khôj bōo hùu-cák láaw.              |
| A. Will you get to meet her?  | A. càw si dàj hùu-cák káp láaw bōo?         |
| B. Yes, I'll get to meet her. | B. mēen lèew, khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp láaw. |
| They will come to my house.   | khá-càw si máa hýan khôj.                   |

NOTES

- 1) hùu-cák means "to be acquainted or familiar with (someone or something)".  

<u>khôj hùu-cák láaw</u>	"I know her."
<u>càw hùu-cák mýaŋ wíaŋ-can bōo?</u>	"Are you familiar with Vientiane?"
  
- 2) dàj + Main Verb means "to have the opportunity (to do something)" as in these examples:  

<u>khôj dàj hùu-cák káp láaw</u>	(I had the opportunity to become acquainted with him.)
"I got to meet him."	
<u>khôj si dàj hùu-cák káp láaw</u>	"I will get to meet her."
  
- 3) náan kin-lìan is a Noun Compound meaning "a party" and is made up of náan "celebration" + kin "to eat" + lían "to treat s.o."

- 4) In Lao when referring to the male and female offspring in a family one must indicate not only their sex but also their relative ages. Consider this hypothetical family of 5 children:

Sex:	M	F	M	F	M
Age:	21	19	17	15	10
Rank:	1	2	3	4	5

Child number 3 refers to

- 1 as àaj [khôj] "older brother".
- 2 as òaj [khôj] "older sister".
- 4 as nòon-săaw [khôj] "younger sister."
- 5 as nòon-sáaj [khôj] "younger brother".

- 5) When referring to in-laws, one must indicate whether they are the husband's or the wife's.

phōo-pūu (1)      mēε-njāa (2)      phōo-thâw (3)      mēε-thâw (4)

phǔa

mía

"husband"

"wife"

(1) her father-in-law

(2) her mother-in-law

(3) his father-in-law

(4) his mother-in-law



APPLICATION

1. If you heard someone say khôj dâj hùu-cák káp láaw, you would assume that the speaker (a) knew the person he was talking about, (b) did not know that person, (c) had met that person, (d) had not met that person.
2. If you heard someone say khôj hùu-cák mýaη wíañ-can, (a) you would know that he had been to Vientiane. (b) You would know that he know at least where Vientiane is located.
3. If a person says ỳaj khôj, you know the person he is talking about is (a) older than he, (b) younger than he, (c) male, (d) female, (e) you can not tell whether the person is younger or older, male or female.
4. If a person says àaj khôj, you know the person he is talking about is (a) female, (b) male, (c) younger than the speaker (d) older than the speaker (e) sex and ages are unclear.
5. Is the situation described in the following statement possible?  
láaw pen nóoη-săaw khôj lē| khôj pen nòoη-sáaj láaw
6. In the situation described in the following statement possible?  
khôj pen ỳaj cằw lē| cằw pen nòoη-sáaj khôj.
7. fill in the blanks with dék-nôoη or lùuk as appropriate:  
cằw hẻn \_\_\_\_\_(1) phũu nằn boo? láaw pen \_\_\_\_\_ (2) sắaw khôj
8. If a person said to someone pho-o-pũu cằw pen phỳan khôj would he be talking to (a) a man, (b) a woman, (c) either, (d) neither
9. If someone said khôj dâj hùu-cák káp mēε-thằw cằw, you would know she was talking to a man. True or false?
10. Could this be a true statement? mēε-njāa cằw pen mēε khôj
11. Could this be true? pho-o-thằw khôj pen pho-o-pũu cằw

---

Answers: 1a and c, 2b, 3a and d, 4b and d, 5no, 6yes, 7(1)dék-nôoη  
(2)lùuk, 8b, 9true, 10yes, 11yes

Cycle 19

M-1

Central part	phàak kaṅ	ພາກກາງ
Southern part	phàak tàj	ພາກໃຕ້
Northern part	phàak nǎ	ພາກເໜືອ
Eastern part	phàak taa-wén ôk	ພາກຕາເວັນ ອອກ
Western part	phàak taa-wén tók	ພາກຕາເວັນ ຕົກ

I am from the Central part.	khôj máa cáak phàak kaṅ.	ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກພາກກາງ.
He is from the Southern part.	láaw máa cáak phàak tàj.	ລາວມາຈາກພາກໃຕ້.
They are from the Northern part.	khá-càw máa cáak phàak nǎ.	ເຂົາເຈົ້າມາຈາກພາກເໜືອ.
John is from the Eastern part.	khôj máa cáak phàak taa-wén ôk.	ທ່ານ ຈອນ ມາຈາກພາກ ຕາເວັນ ອອກ.
I am from the Western part.	khôj máa cáak phàak taa-wén tók.	ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກພາກ ຕາເວັນ ຕົກ.

M-2

Central part	phàak kaan	ພາກກາງ
Southeastern part	phàak taa-wén ôok sǎan-tàj	ພາກຕາເວັນອອກສຽງໃຕ້
Northeastern part	phàak taa-wén ôok sǎan-nǎ	ພາກຕາເວັນອອກສຽງເໜືອ
Northwestern part	phàak taa-wén tók sǎan-nǎ	ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງເໜືອ
Southwestern part	phàak taa-wén tók sǎan-tàj	ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງໃຕ້

Vientiane is in the Central part of Laos.	mýan wían-can jūu tháan phàak kaan khǒwng pá-thèet láaw.	ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ ຢູ່ທາງພາກກາງຂອງປະເທດລາວ.
---	--	--------------------------------------

My village is in the Southeastern part of Laos.	bàan khôj jūu tháan phàak taa-wén ôok sǎan-tàj khǒwng pá-thèet láaw.	ບ້ານຂ້ອຍຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສຽງໃຕ້ຂອງປະເທດລາວ.
---	--	--

Hua phan Province is in the Northeastern part of Laos.	khwěɛn hǔa-phán jūu tháan phàak taa-wén ôok sǎan-nǎ khǒwng pá-thèet láaw.	ແຂວງຫົວພັນ ຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສຽງເໜືອຂອງປະເທດລາວ.
--	---	--

Bo Keo Province is in the Northwestern part of Laos.	khwěɛn bōw-kèew jūu tháan phàak taa-wén tók sǎan-nǎ khǒwng pá-thèet láaw.	ແຂວງບໍ່ແກ້ວຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງເໜືອຂອງປະເທດລາວ.
--	---	--

My hometown is in the Southwestern part of Laos.	mýan khôj jūu tháan phàak taa-wén tók sǎan-tàj khǒwng pá-thèet láaw.	ເມືອງຂ້ອຍຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງໃຕ້ຂອງປະເທດລາວ.
--	--	---

**C-1**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. What part of Laos is the teacher from? | A. náaj-khúu máa câak phàak daj khǒᵛᵛ pá-thèet láaw? |
| B. He is from the ..... part.             | B. láaw máa câak phàak.....                          |

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Your friend is from the Southeastern part of Laos, isn't he? | A. ph̄yan càw máa câak phàak taa-wén ôk sǎᵛᵛ-tàj khǒᵛᵛ pá-thèet láaw, mēen boᵛᵛ? |
| B. No, he is from the Southwestern part of Laos.                | B. bōᵛᵛ mēen, láaw máa câak phàak taa-wén tók sǎᵛᵛ-tàj khǒᵛᵛ pá-thèet láaw.      |

**C-3**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. What's your name?                         | A. càw s̄y njǎᵛᵛ?  |
| B. My name is Souksomboun.                   | B. khôj s̄y súk-sǒm-buun.                                  |
| A. You are a Laotian, aren't you?            | A. càw pen khón láaw mēen boᵛᵛ?                            |
| B. Yes, I am a Laotian.                      | B. mēen lèew, khôj pen khón láaw.                          |
| A. Where are you from?                       | A. càw máa câak sǎj?                                       |
| B. I am from city of Vientiane.              | B. khôj máa câak m̄yaᵛᵛ wíᵛᵛ-can.                          |
| A. Where is Vientiane?                       | A. m̄yaᵛᵛ wíᵛᵛ-can jūu sǎj?                                |
| B. Vientiane is in Laos                      | B. m̄yaᵛᵛ wíᵛᵛ-can jūu náj pá-thèet láaw.                  |
| A. In what part of Laos is Vientiane?        | A. m̄yaᵛᵛ wíᵛᵛ-can jūu náj phàak daj khǒᵛᵛ pá-thèet láaw?  |
| B. Vientiane is in the Central part of Laos. | B. m̄yaᵛᵛ wíᵛᵛ-can jūu náj phàak kaᵛᵛ khǒᵛᵛ pá-thèet láaw. |

NOTES

- 1) Except for tàj "South" and nǎa "North" all compass points are compounds:

táa-wén ôok "East": táa-wén "sun"+ ôok "to come up"

táa-wén tók "West": táa-wén "sun"+ tók "to fall"

Compounds such as Southeast are made with sǎaŋ "direction":

táa-wén tók sǎaŋ-nǎa "Northwest":

táa-wén tók "West" + sǎaŋ "direction" + nǎa "North"

táa-wén-ôok sǎaŋ-tàj "Southeast":

táa-wén-ôok "East" + sǎaŋ "direction" + tàj "South".

táa-wén tók sǎaŋ-nǎa "Northeast" are formed in a similar fashion.

- 2) In longer Noun phrases khǒoŋ "of" must be used so that the relationship between the parts of the NP are clear, as in:

phàak táa-wén ôok sǎaŋ-tàj khǒoŋ pá-thèet láaw  
"The Southeastern part of Laos."

Cycle 20

M-1

To put (it) down	wáaŋ wàj	ວາງໄວ້
To stand (it) up	tàŋ wàj	ຕັ້ງໄວ້
To run out	lēen ôok	ແລ່ ອອກ

Where are you going to put the book? Over here?	càw si wáaŋ pỳm wàj sǎj? wàj phìi boo?	ເຈົ້າສິວາງປຶ້ມໄວ້ໃສ? ໄວ້ພີ້ບໍ?
Where are you going to set the table up? Over here?	càw si tàŋ wàj sǎj? wàj phìi boo?	ເຈົ້າສິຕັ້ງໂຕະໄວ້ໃສ? ໄວ້ພີ້ບໍ?
What exit are you going to run out through? (The one) here?	càw si lēen ôok sǎj? ôok phìi boo?	ເຈົ້າສິແລ່ ອອກໃສ? ອອກພີ້ບໍ?

M-2

To put (something) down	wáaη wàj	ວາງໄວ້
To leave (something)	pa' wàj	ປະໄວ້
To stick (something) on	tít sāj	ຕິດໃສ່
To take (something) out	aw... ôok	ເອົາ ... ອອກ
To drop	thím lónη	ຖິ້ມລົງ

I'm going to take the book over there and put it down.	khôj si aw pỳm paj wáaη wàj phùn.	ຂ້ອຍສິເອົາປຶ້ມໄປ ວາງໄວ້ພູ້ .
I'm going to take my car over there and leave it.	khôj si aw lôt khôj paj pa' wàj phùn.	ຂ້ອຍສິເອົາລົດຂ້ອຍໄປ ປະໄວ້ພູ້ .
I'm going to take the picture over there and stick it up.	khôj si aw hùup paj tít sāj phùn.	ຂ້ອຍສິເອົາຮູບໄປ ຕິດໃສ່ພູ້ .

C-1

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. Where are you going to put this book? over here?       | A. càw si wáaη pỳm hũa nìi wáj sāj? wàj phìi bōw? |
| B. No. I'm going to take this book and put it over there. | B. bōw, khôj si aw pỳm hũa nìi paj wáaη wàj phùn. |

C-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. Are you going to take this book and leave it over there? | A. càw si aw pỳm hũa nìi paj pa'wàj phùn bōw? |
| B. No. I'm going to leave this book here.                   | B. bōw, khôj si pa'pỳm hũa nìi wàj nìi.       |

NOTES

- 1) In Lao Verb Compounds are used in situations where Verb + preposition or Verb would be used in English:

wáaη wáj "to put something in a place and leave it there":

wáaŋ "to put, place" + wàj "to leave for future use" :  
thée lón "to pour, dump something out":  
thée "to pour, dump" + lón "to go down";  
tàŋ wàj "to set something up and leave it there":  
tàŋ "to put something in a standing position" + wàj "Leave for future use"  
njíŋ sāj "to shoot towards" :  
njíŋ "to shoot a firearm; etc. " + sāj "to put in";  
lēɛŋ ôok "to escape out through" :  
lēɛŋ "to run" + ôok "to go out".

- 2) If we analyze an English verb like "bring", we will see that at least two things are involved: (1) taking hold of something and (2) moving it from one place to another in the direction of the speaker. In Lao both of these actions are reflected in the verb combination aw NP máa
- (aw "to take hold of" + máa "to go towards the speaker) aw NP pa.j is used to indicate that the action is away from the speaker.
- (a) Any object that is to be carried occurs after aw, thus aw pým pa.j "take the book away", etc..
- (b) A series of other verbs may occur after aw pa.j, etc. aw pa.j wáaŋ wàj phùn "to take (it) over there and leave it".
- 3) thîm lòn means literally "to throw down" but corresponds to English "drop".
- 4) pá' means "to leave something", thus pá' mía "to divorce your wife";  
pá' wàj "to leave something temporarily."



APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khôj si aw paj wáaη wàj phùn, aw paj wáaη wàj is  
(a) a series of Nouns, (b) Verb + Preposition, (c) a series of verbs,  
(d) none of these.
2. True or false? aw means "to bring".
3. wàj in the Verbs Compound wáaη wàj indicates that (a) the speaker has no further use for something, (b) He has further use for it, (c) There is no reference to further use.
4. Match these Lao sentences with the English sentences:
  - (a) aw sǎo-dam láaw paj wàj phùn (a) He didn't drop his umbrella
  - (b) láaw si aw múak paj pá' wàj sǎj (b) Is the policeman aiming his gun over there?
  - (c) láaw bōo dàj thím khán hōm láaw lòn (c) Put his pencil over there.
  - (d) tamluat si njín sāj phùn bōo (d) Where is he going to leave his hat?

---

Answers: 1c, 2false, 3b, 4a and c, b and d, c and a, d and b

Cycle 21

M-1

In the box	náj káp	ໃ ກັບ
On top of the cabinet	thón lǎn tùu	ເທິງຫລັງຕູ້
In the drawer	náj lìn-sāk	ໃນລິ້ນຊັກ
In the can	náj ká-poon	ໃ ກະປອງ
Beside the bench	khâan màa-nān	ຂ້າງມ້າງ

Where? In this box? jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp nìi boo? ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ໃ ກັບນີ້ບໍ?

Where? On top of this cabinet? jūu sǎj? jūu thón lǎn tùu nìi boo? ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ເທິງຫລັງຕູ້ນີ້ບໍ?

Where? In this drawer? jūu sǎj? jūu náj lìn-sāk nìi boo? ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ໃນລິ້ນຊັກນີ້ບໍ?

Where? In this can? jūu sǎj? jūu náj ká-poon nìi boo? ຢູ່ໃສ? ຢູ່ໃ ກະປອງນີ້ບໍ?

M-2

Bag	thǒṅ	ຖົງ
Package	hōw	ຫໍ່
Bottle, classifier	kèɛw, nūaj	ແກ້ວ, ຫວ່ຍ
Glass, classifier	cōok, nūaj	ຈອກ, ຫວ່ຍ
Basket, classifier	ká-tāa, nūaj	ກະຕ່າ, ຫວ່ຍ

In that bag	jūu náj thǒṅ nàṅ.	ຢູ່ໃນຖົງນັ້ນ.
In that package.	jūu náj hōw nàṅ.	ຢູ່ໃນຫໍ່ນັ້ນ.
In that bottle.	jūu náj kèɛw nūaj nàṅ	ຢູ່ໃນແກ້ວຫນ່ວຍນັ້ນ.
In that glass.	jūu náj cōok nūaj nàṅ	ຢູ່ໃນຈອກຫນ່ວຍນັ້ນ.
In that basket.	jūu náj ká-tāa nūaj nàṅ.	ຢູ່ໃນກະຕ່າຫນ່ວຍນັ້ນ.

C-1

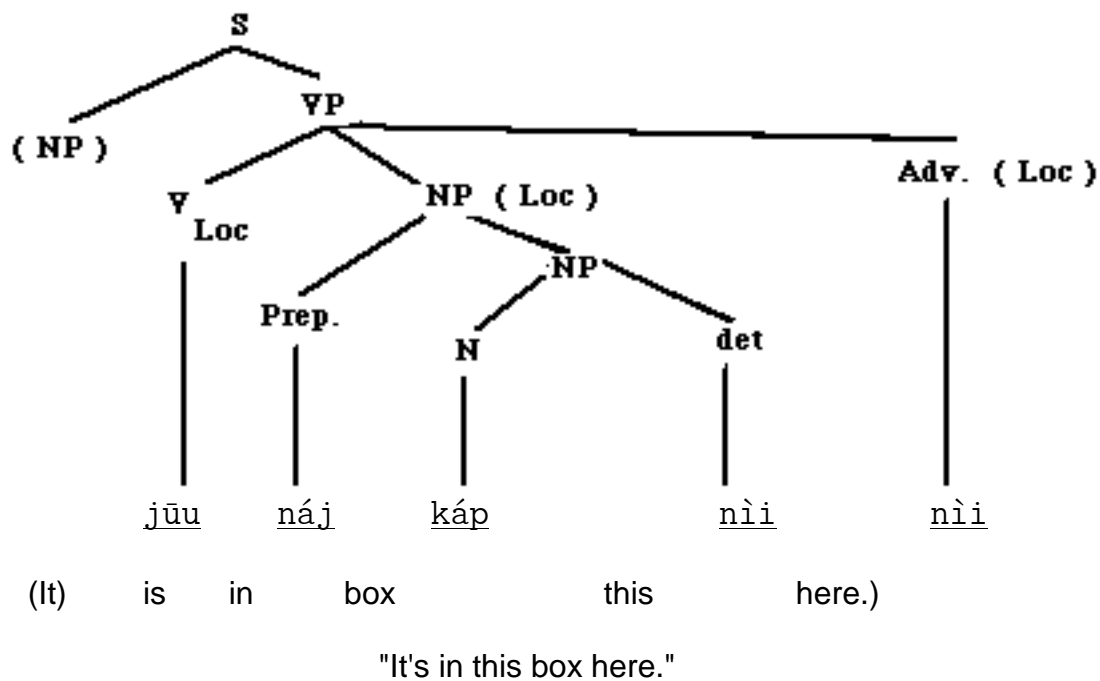
- |                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. Where? In this box here? | A. jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp nìi nìi bōw? |
| B. No. In that box there.   | B. bōw, jūu náj káp nàṅ hân.         |

C-2

- |                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. Where? In that bottle there? | A. jūu sǎj? jūu náj kèɛw nàṅ hân bōw? |
| B. No. In this bottle here.     | B. bōw, jūu náj kèɛw nìi nìi          |

NOTES

- 1) As can be seen in this grammatical exposition, nìi may function both as a Determiner and as an adverb of place:



A complete list of words functioning like nìi is given here:

Determiner

nìi "this"

nàn "that"

Adverb of Place

nìi "here"

phìi "around here"

hân "here"

phùn "way over there"

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence jūu náj thǒŋ nàn hân, hân is (a) NP, (b) preposition, (c) determiner, (d) averb.
2. In the sentence above nàn is (a) NP, (b) determiner, (c) adverb (d) none of these.
3. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:
  - (a) jūu náj ká-tāa nūaj \_\_\_\_\_ "In that basket there."
  - (b) jūu thǒŋ lǎŋ tùu \_\_\_\_\_ bɔɔ? "On top of this cabinet here?"
  - (c) jūu khāaŋ màa-nāŋ \_\_\_\_\_ bɔɔ? "Beside that bench way over there?"
  - (d) jūu \_\_\_\_\_? "Where?"
  - (e) jūu \_\_\_\_\_ "Way over there."
  - (f) jūu \_\_\_\_\_ "Near here."
  - (g) jūu náj thǒŋ \_\_\_\_\_ " In that bag."
  - (h) jūu náj kέεw \_\_\_\_\_ nàn hân "In that bottle there."
  - (i) jūu \_\_\_\_\_ tùu nìi nìi bɔɔ "On top of this cabinet here?."

---

Answers: 1d, 2b, 3(a) nàn hân, (b) nìi phìi (or) nìi nìi, (c) àn phùn, (d) sǎj, (e) phùn, (f) phìi (or nìi), (g) nàn, (h) nūaj, (i) thǒŋ lǎŋ

Cycle 22

M-1

Open the door	khǎj pá-tuu	ໄຂປະຕູ
Close the window	át pōwŋ-jiam	ອັດປ່ອງຢ້ຽມ
Lock the drawer	sāj ká-cεε lìn-sāk	ໃສ່ກະແຈລີ້ນຊັກ
Unlock the trunk	khǎj ká-cεε hīip	ໄຂກະແຈຫີບ
Go down the stairs	lóng khân-daj	ລົງຂັ້ນໃດ

Are you going to open this door ?	càw si khǎj pá-tuu nìi boow?	ເຈົ້າສິໄຂປະຕູນີ້ບໍ່?
Are you going to close this window?	càw si át pōwŋ-jiam nìi boow?	ເຈົ້າສິອັດປ່ອງຢ້ຽມນີ້ບໍ່?
Are you going to lock this drawer ?	càw si sāj ká-cεε lìn-sāk nìi boow?	ເຈົ້າສິໃສ່ກະແຈລີ້ນຊັກນີ້ ບໍ່?
Are you going to unlock this trunk?	càw si khǎj ká-cεε hīip nìi boow?	ເຈົ້າສິໄຂກະແຈຫີບນີ້ບໍ່?
Are you going down these stairs?	càw si lóng khân-daj nìi boow?	ເຈົ້າສິລົງຂັ້ນໃດນີ້ບໍ່?

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

<b>M-2</b>	Open the door	khǎj pá-tuu	ໄຂປະຕູ
	Change the tire	pīan jaan	ປ່ຽນ ຍາງ
	Go to	paj hǎa,	ໄປຫາ
	Help, (classifier)	sōoj-lǎa,	ຊ່ອຍເຫລືອ
	Contact, communicate	tít-tōo káp	ຕິດຕໍ່ກັບ

I'm going to open the door.	khôj si khǎj pá-tuu	ຂ້ອຍສິໄຂປະຕູ.
I'm going to change the tire.	khôj si pīan jaan lot.	ຂ້ອຍສິປ່ຽນ ຍາງລົດ.
I'm going to go see that person .	khôj si paj hǎa phūu nǎn .	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຫາຜູ້ນັ້ນ.
I'm going to go and help that person .	khôj si paj sōoj-lǎa, phūu nǎn.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຊ່ອຍເຫລືອຜູ້ນັ້ນ.
I'm going to go and contact that person .	khôj si paj tít-tōo káp phūu nǎn.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຕິດຕໍ່ກັບຜູ້ນັ້ນ.

**C-1**

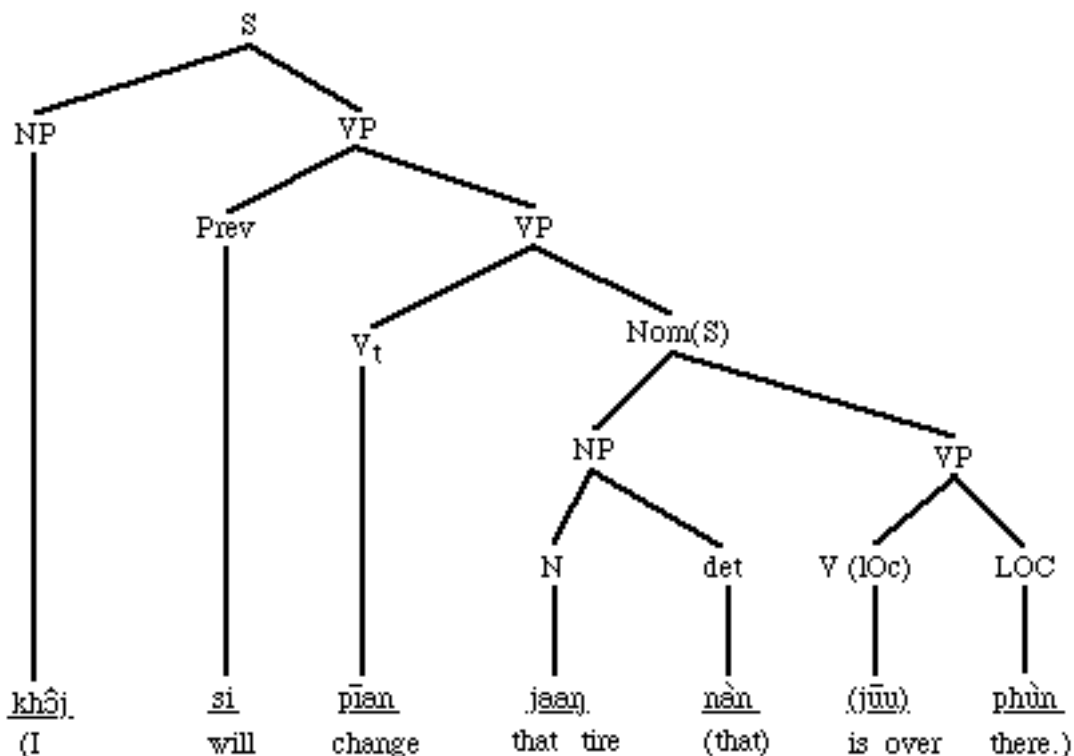
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>A. Are you going to close this window over here?</p> <p>B. No. I'm going to close that window over there.</p> | <p>A. càw si át pōon-jiam nìi phìi boov?</p> <p>B. bōo khôj si át pōon-jiam nǎn phùn.</p> |
|--|---|

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>A. Are you going to go down those stairs over there?</p> <p>B. No. I'm going to go down these stairs over there?</p> | <p>A. càw si lóng khân-daj nǎn phùn boov?</p> <p>B. bōo, khôj si lóng khân-daj nìi phìi.</p> |
|---|--|

NOTES

- 1) phīi and phùn may serve to indicate the location of the Noun Phrase they follow as in the example below:



"I will change that tire over there."

In this example the reference is to a particular thing which is in a particular place. If a person didn't understand the statement above, his question would be jaaŋ daj? "Which tire?"

- 2) khǎj "to open, unlock", át "to close", and sāj "to put in" occur in constructions like these:

<u>khǎj</u> <u>pá-tuu</u> , <u>pōŋ-jiam</u> , <u>tùu</u> , etc.	"to open the door, window, closet, etc."
<u>khǎj</u> <u>ká-cεε</u> <u>pá-tuu</u> , <u>hīip</u> , <u>tùu</u> , <u>lìn-sāk</u> , etc.	"to unlock the door, trunk, closet, drawer, etc."
<u>át</u> <u>pá-tuu</u> , <u>pōŋ-jiam</u> , etc.	"to close the door, etc."
<u>sāj</u> <u>kǎεε</u> <u>pàtuu</u> , <u>hīip</u> , <u>tùu</u> , <u>lìn-sāk</u> , etc.	"to lock the door, etc."

- 3) paj hǎa + Person means "to go to see a person".



- 4) tít-tōo káp + Person means "to contact someone (in person, or by telephone, or some other way)."

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) càw si khǎj \_\_\_\_\_ pàtuu nìi phìi bōo?

"Are you going to unlock this door over here?."

(b) khôj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ phyan phūu nàn phūu

"I'm going to see that friend over there."

(c) láaw si bōo \_\_\_\_\_ tùu nìi bōo?

"Isn't he going to close this closet?"

(d) khôj si tít tōo \_\_\_\_\_ phūu nàn phùn

"I'm going to contact that person over there."

(e) khôj si \_\_\_\_\_ láaw

"I'll help her."

2. Read the Noun Phrases and answer the questions:

(a) pá-tuu nìi phìi.                      pá-tuu jūu sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

(b) jaan nàn phùn.                      jaan jūu sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

(c) phūu nàn phùn.                      phūu nàn jūu sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

(d) pōon-jiam nìi phìi.                      pōon-jiam jūu sǎj? \_\_\_\_\_

3. In the NP lìn-sāk nìi phìi, phìi is (a) determiner (b) adverb (c) verb (d) none of these.

4. In the NP above, phìi (a) indicates the location of lìn-sāk, (b) modifies nìi, (c) has no grammatical relationship to lìn-sāk nìi.

---

Answers: 1(a) ká-cεε, (b) hǎa, (c) át, (d) káp, (e) sōoj, 2(a) jūu phìi,  
(b) jūu phùn, (c) jūu phùn, (d) jūu phìi, 3b, 4a

Cycle 23

M-1

To read, book, (classifier)	āan, pỳm, [hǔa]	ອ່ານ, ບໍ່ມ, (ຫົວ)
To fix, car, (classifier)	pεεη, lōt, [khán]	ແປງ, ລົດ, (ຄັ )
To use, thing, these	sàj, khǒວη, lāw-nìi	ໃຊ້ຂອງ, ເຫລົ່ານີ້
To wash, jacket, (classifier)	sāk, sỳa-nòok, [phỳyn]	ຂ້າ, ເສື້ອນອກ, (ຜົນ)

Are you going to read this book?      cằw si āan pỳm hǔa nìi      ເຈົ້າສິອ່ານບໍ່ມຫົວນີ້ບໍ່?  
bວວ?

Are you going to fix this car ?      cằw si pεεη lōt khán      ເຈົ້າສິແປງລົດຄັນນີ້ບໍ່?  
nìi bວວ?

Are you going to use these things?      cằw si sàj khǒວη      ເຈົ້າສິໃຊ້ຂອງເຫລົ່ານີ້ບໍ່?  
lāw-nìi bວວ?

Are you going to wash this jacket ?      cằw si sāk sỳa-nòok      ເຈົ້າສິຂ້າເສື້ອນອກຜົນນີ້ບໍ່?  
phỳyn nìi bວວ?ບໍ່?

M-2

To read, book,(classifier)	āan, pỳm, [hǔa]	ອ່ານ, ປຶ້ມ, (ຫົວ)
To print, type; letter	phím, nǎᅇ-sỷ	ພິມ, ຫ້າງສີ
To buy, paper	sỷ, cì	ຊື້, ເຈ້ງ
To explain; matter, about	sìi-cεεᅇ, lýᅇᅇ	ຊີ້ແຈງ; ເລື້ອງ

I'm going to read this book.                      khôj si āan pỳm hǔa nìi                      ຂ້ອຍອ່ານປຶ້ມຫົວນີ້

I'm going to type this letter.                      khôj si phím nǎᅇ-sỷ nìi                      ຂ້ອຍສິພິມຫ້າງສີນີ້

I'm going to buy paper.                      khôj si paj sỷ cì                      ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຊື້ເຈ້ງ.

I'm going to explain this matter.                      khôj si paj sìi-cεεᅇ lýᅇᅇ nìi                      ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຊື້ແຈງເລື້ອງນີ້

**M-3**

To repair, fix	pεεŋ	ແປງ
Engine, motor, machine, (classifier)	kh̄yāŋ-cák, [nūaj]	ເຄື່ອງຈັກ, (ໜ່ວຍ)
To assemble	pá-kôop	ປະກອບ
To charge (electricity)	sâak	ສາກ
Bowl	thûaj	ຖ້ວຍ
Plate	sáam	ຊາມ
Those	lāw-nàn	ເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ
Wash	làaŋ	ລ້າງ

**M- 4**

Tire (car), (classifier)	jaaŋ-lōt, [sên]	ຢາງລົດ, (ເສັ້ນ)
Patch	tâap	ຕາບ
Lamp, (classifier)	tá-kiɑŋ, [nūaj]	ຕະກຽງ, (ຫ'ວຍ)
To light	tàj	ໄຕ້
Blanket	phâa-hōm	ຜ້າຫໍ່ມ
Those	lāw-nàn	ເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ
To distribute	cêk-jaaŋ	ແຈກຢາຍ
Bed, (classifier)	tiaŋ, [nūaj]	ຕຽງ, (ຫ'ວຍ)
To set up	tàŋ	ຕັ້ງ

**C-1**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>A. Are you going to read this book over here?</p> <p>B. No. I'm going to read it over there.</p> | <p>A. càw si āan p̄m hǔa n̄i j̄u ph̄i boɔ?</p> <p>B. bōɔ, khôj si āan j̄u ph̄n.</p> |
|---|---|

**C-2**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. Is he going to bring that bulldozer over here and fix it? | A. láaw si aw lōt-dút khán nàn máa pɛɛŋ jūu phìi bōo? |
| B. No. He is going to take it over here and fix it.          | B. bōo, láaw si aw paj pɛɛŋ jūu phùn.                 |

**C-3** (With reference to Cycles 20, 21 and 22)

Tutor: "He is going to read this book here."  
"láaw si āan pỳm hũa nìi nīi."

- |                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. What is he going to do?         | A. láaw si hēt njǎŋ?        |
| B. He is going to read a book.     | B. láaw si āan pỳm.         |
| A. Which book is he going to read? | A. láaw si āan pỳm hũa daj? |
| B. He is going to read this book.  | B. láaw si āan pỳm hũa nìi. |
| A. Where is this book?             | A. pỳm hũa nìi jūu sǎj?     |
| B. This book is here.              | B. pỳm hũa nìi jūu nīi.     |
| A. Where is he going to read the   | A. láaw si āan pỳm jūu sǎj? |
| B. I don't know.                   | B. khôj bōo hùu.            |

C-4

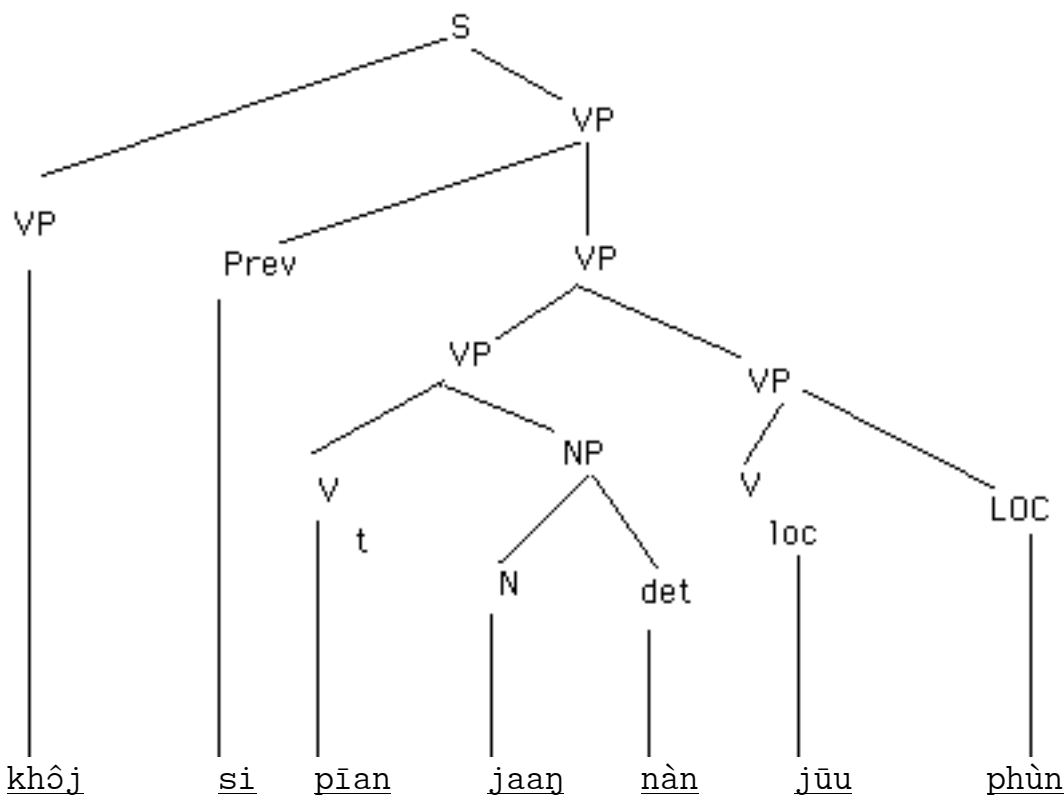
Tutor: "He is going to change that tire over there."

"láaw si pīan jaan sên nàn jūu phùn."

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| A. What is he going to do?              | A. láaw si hēt njǎṅ?          |
| B. He is going to change a tire.        | B. láaw si pīan jaan.         |
| A. Which tire is he going to change?    | A. láaw si pīan jaan sên daj? |
| B. He is going to change that tire.     | B. láaw si pīan jaan sên nàn. |
| A. Where is he going to change it?      | A. láaw si pīan jūu sǎj?      |
| B. He is going to change it over there. | B. láaw si pīan jūu phùn.     |
| A. Where is that tire?                  | A. jaan sên nàn jūu sǎj?      |
| B. I don't know.                        | B. khôj bōo hùu.              |

NOTES

- 1) If instead of indicating the location of a particular object [pá-tuu nìi phìi], the reference is to the location of a particular activity, jūu + LOC is attached to the main VP as illustrated below:



(I will change tire that (I will be) over there.

"I will change that tire (in that spot) over there."

The emphasis here is on where the changing will take place not on the particular tire to be changed; hence, the question which would elicit this response is:

càw si pīan [jaaŋ] jūu sǎj "Where will you change the tire?"

- 2) lāw "group, bunch" is frequently used with Count Nouns to indicate "plurality".

khǒoŋ lāw-nìi "these thing"

phâa-hôm lāw nàŋ "those blankets"

- 3) A list of unit classifiers and the nouns they are used with is given below:



**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

<u>Classifier</u>		<u>Noun Referent</u>	
hũa	"head"	pỳm	"book"
khán	"vehicle"	lōt	"automobile"
		lōt-dút	"bulldozer"
phỷyn	"cloth"	sỳa-nōok	"jacket"
nũaj	"unit" (It is used for fruit, machines, furniture, equipment, etc.)	khỳaη-cák	"engine"
		tá-kiaη	"lamp"
		tiaη	"bed"
		mōo-fáj	"battery"
sên	"string"	jaaη [lōt]	"tire"

APPLICATION

1. In each of the following sentences indicate whether the emphasis is on the location of the NP or the VP by writing NP or VP in the blank after the sentence;

(a) khôj si paj āan pỳm hũa nìi jūu phùn \_\_\_\_\_

(b) khôj si paj hũa phūu nàn phùn \_\_\_\_\_

(c) càw si lónj khân-daj nìi phìi boo? \_\_\_\_\_

(d) láaw si aw thūaj-sáam lāw-nàn máa làaη jūu phìi boo? \_\_\_\_\_

(e) càw si sàj khỏoη lāw-nìi jūu phìi boo? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) càw si āan pỳm \_\_\_\_\_ nìi boo?  
"Are you going to read this book?:"

(b) khôj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ lỳaη nìi jūu phùn  
"I'm going to explain this matter over there."

(c) aw lôt-dút \_\_\_\_\_ máa pεεη jūu phìi  
"Bring that bulldozer over here and fix it."

(d) láaw si aw phâa-hôm lāw-nàn paj cêεk-jaaj \_\_\_\_\_  
"He is going to take those blankets over there and distribute them."

(e) khôj si sāk sỳa-nòok \_\_\_\_\_ jūu phìi  
"I'm going to wash this jacket over here."

(f) láaw si aw jaaη-lôt \_\_\_\_\_ nàn paj \_\_\_\_\_ jūu phùn  
"He's going to take that tire over there and patch it."

---

Answers: 1(a) VP (b) NP (c) NP (d) VP (e) VP, 2 (a) hũa (b) sìi-cεεη (c) khân nàn (d) jūu phùn (e) phỷyn nìi (f) sên / tâap

Cycle 24

M-1

Zero	sǔun	ສູນ	Six	hók	ຫົກ
One	n̄ȳŋ	ນຶ່ງ	Seven	cét	ເຈັດ
Two	sǒv̄ŋ	ສອງ	Eight	pêet	ເປັດ
Three	sǎam	ສາມ	Nine	kàw	ເກົ້າ
Four	sīi	ສີ່	Ten	síp	ສິບ
Five	hâa	ຫ້າ			

M-2

Eleven.	síp-ét	ສິບເອັດ
Twelve	síp-sǒv̄ŋ	ສິບສອງ
Twenty.	sáaw	ຊາວ
Twenty one	sáaw-ét	ຊາວເອັດ
Twenty two	sáaw-sǒv̄ŋ	ຊາວສອງ
Thirty.	sǎam-síp	ສາມສິບ
Thirty one	sǎam-síp-ét	ສາມສິບເອັດ
Thirty two.	sáam-síp-sǒv̄ŋ	ສາມສິບສອງ
Hundred.	hòvj	ຮ້ອຍ
One hundred and one	hòvj-ét	ຮ້ອຍເອັດ
Thousand.	phán	ພັນ
One thousand and one	n̄ȳŋ-phán káp n̄ȳŋ	ນຶ່ງພັນກັບນຶ່ງ
One thousand one hundred	n̄ȳŋ-phán-n̄ȳŋ-hòvj	ນຶ່ງພັນນຶ່ງຮ້ອຍ
	l̄ȳy phán-ét	ຫລື ພັນ ເອັດ
One thousand two hundred	phán-sǒv̄ŋ	ພັນ ສອງ
"One thousand one hundred and	phán-ét káp	ພັນ ເອັດ ກັບ
One thousand one hundred is	phán-ét pen	ພັນ ເອັດ ເປັດ
Two thousand two hundred"	sǒv̄ŋ-phán-sǒv̄ŋ	ສອງພັນ ສອງ

M-3

Multiply	khúun	ຄູ
Divide	hăan	ຫາ
Subtract	lōp	ລົບ
Subtract	aw-ôok	ເອົາອອກ
Add	bûak	ບວກ
Add	sôm	ສົມ

What is two and five?	sǎwng káp hâa pen thāw daj?	ສອງກັບຫ້າເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is fourteen time three?	síp-sīi khúun sǎam pen thāw daj?	ສິບສີ່ຄູນສາມເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is four divide by two?	sīi hăan hâj sǎwng pen thāw daj?	ສີ່ຫານໃຫ້ສອງເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is eight minus three?	pêet lōp sǎam pen thāw daj?	ແປດລົບສາມເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is twenty six and seven?	sáaw-hók bûak cét pen thāw daj?	ຊາວຫົກບວກເຈັດເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is thirty two plus two?	sǎam-síp-sǎwng sôm sǎwng pen thāw daj?	ສາມສິບສອງສົມສອງເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?
What is fifty one minus six?	hâa-síp-ét aw-ôok hók pen thāw daj?	ຫ້າສິບເອັດເອົາອອກຫົກເປັນເທົ່າໃດ?

C-1

- A. ... and ... is how much?
- B. ... and ... is ... ..

- A. ... káp ... pen thāw daj?
- B. ... káp ... pen ... ..

**C-2**

- A. ... and ... is ..., isn't it?      A. ... káp ... pen ... mēen bōo?
- B. No, it isn't ... and ... is ...      B. bōo mēen, ... káp ... pen ...

NOTES

- 1) The Lao numerical system is a decimal system and with a few exceptions complex numbers are made by multiplying by and/ or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: n̄ȳŋ "1", sǒoŋ "2", sǎam "3", sīi "4",  
hâa "5", hók "6", cét "7", pêet "8", kàw "9", síp "10".

Multiples of ten (except for 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam síp (3x10), 70 is cét síp (7x10), 13 is síp sǎam (10+3), 34 is sǎam síp sīi (3x10+4), etc. 20 is sáaw; 22 is sáaw sǒoŋ, etc.

The number one alone is n̄ȳŋ, but in compounds it is - ét, thus 21 is sáaw-ét; 51, hâa síp-ét, 61, hók síp-ét, etc.

100 is n̄ȳŋ hòoj [lòoj] or hòoj [lòoj], but 101 is hòoj ét [lòoj-ét] 400 is sīi hòoj [sīi lòoj]. hòoj and lòoj are interchangeable. phán-ét means "1100"; 1001 is phán káp n̄ȳŋ.

- 2) káp means "and" or "plus" when used as a connective between Nouns, NP, and numbers. It indicates that something has been added.

- (1) sǒoŋ káp sǎam pen hâa "two plus three is five"  
 (2) náaj-khúu káp nāk-hían "the teacher and students"

káp is not used as a sentence connective.

- 3) thāw daj "how much, how many" is used to request a numerical or quantitative response:

Q: sǎam síp sǒoŋ káp sǒoŋ pen thāw daj  
 "How much is 32 and 2?"

A; sǎam síp sīi. "34".

APPLICATION

1. If the correct Lao form is written after the Arabic number, write "correct" after the Lao; if it is incorrect, write in the correct Lao form.

- (a) 93: kàw síp sǎam \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) 27: sǒɔŋ síp cét \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) 71: cét síp n̄yŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) 58: p̄ɛt síp hâa \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) 101: hòɔj ét \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) 24: sáaw sīi \_\_\_\_\_
- (g) 605: hók lòɔj hâa \_\_\_\_\_
- (h) 42: sīi sǒɔŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (i) 1: ét \_\_\_\_\_
- (j) 25: sáaw síp hâa \_\_\_\_\_

2. Write in the correct answers to the following problems. Use Arabic numbers.

- (a) p̄ɛt káp hók pen \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) sǎam síp ét káp sīi síp kàw pen \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) hâa hòɔj káp cét sīp cét pen \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) sǔun káp sǔun pen \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) sáaw kàw káp p̄ɛt síp cét pen \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a) correct, (b) sáaw-ét, (c) cét-síp-cét, (d) hâa-síp-p̄ɛt, (e) correct, (f) correct, (g) correct, (h) sīi-síp-sǒɔŋ, (i) n̄yŋ, (j) sáaw-hâa, 2(a) 14, (b) 80, (c) 577, (d) 0, (e) 116

Cycle 25

M-1

Today	mỳy-nìi	ມື້ນີ້
Tomorrow	mỳy-ỳyn	ມື້ອື່ນ
The day after tomorrow	mỳy-hỳy	ມື້ຮື
Yesterday	mỳy-wáan nìi	ມື້ວານນີ້
Day before yesterday	mỳy-sýyn	ມື້ຊົນ
Three days ago	mỳy-kōon	ມື້ກ່ອນ
Four days ago	sīi-mỳy-kōon	ສີ່ມື້ກ່ອນ

What day is today?	mỳy-nìi mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day is tomorrow?	mỳy-ỳyn mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ອື່ນແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day is the day after tomorrow?	mỳy-hỳy mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ຮືແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day was yesterday?	mỳy-wáan nìi mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ວານນີ້ແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day was the day before yesterday?	mỳy-sýyn mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ຊົນແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day was three days ago?	mỳy-kōon mēen wán njǎṅ?	ມື້ກ່ອນແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?
What day was four days ago?	sīi mỳy-kōon mēen wán njǎṅ?	ສີ່ມື້ກ່ອນແມ່ນວັນຫຍັງ?

**M-2**

Sunday	wán-aa-thīt	ວັນອາທິດ
Monday	wán-can	ວັນຈັນ
Tuesday	wán-aṅ-kháan	ວັນອັງຄານ
Wednesday	wán-phūt	ວັນພຸດ
Thursday	wán-phā-hát	ວັນພະຫັດ
Friday	wán-súk	ວັນສຸກ
Saturday	wán-sǎw	ວັນເສົາ

Today is Sunday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-aa-thīt.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນອາທິດ.
Today is Monday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-can.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນຈັນ.
Today is Tuesday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-aṅ-kháan.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນອັງຄານ.
Today is Wednesday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-phūt.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນພຸດ.
Today is Thursday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-phā-hát.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນພະຫັດ.
Today is Friday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-súk.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນສຸກ.
Today is Saturday.	mỳy nìi mēen wán-sǎw.	ມື້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນເສົາ.

**C-1**

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| A. What day is today? | A. mỳy nìi mēen wán njǎṅ? |
| B. Today is .....     | B. mỳy nìi mēen .....     |

**C-2**

- |                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. Yesterday was ..., right? | A. mỳy-wáan nìi mēen .. mēen boo? |
| B. No, yesterday was .....   | B. boo mēen, mỳy-wáan nìi mēen    |



NOTES

- 1) mỳy "day" is used in constructions indicating relative time, thus: mỳy nìi "today", mỳy-ỳyn "tomorrow", etc.. mỳy is also used when referring to a period of time, thus sỏ๓ mỳy "two days", kh๓n mỳy "half a day" etc.

wán "day" is used when giving the names of the days of the week:  
wán aa-thīt "Sunday", wán a๓-kháan "Tuesday", etc.

- 2) When asking the day of the week, mỳy nìi m๓๓ wán njǎ๓ "What day is today?" is used.
- 3) k๓๓ "before", "ago" is used to refer to a specific time in the past: sīi mỳy k๓๓ "four days ago", etc.

APPLICATION

1. Starting with the assumption that today is Wednesday fill in the blanks:

- (a) mỳy hỳy mēen \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) sīi mỳy kōon mēen \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) mỳy wáan nìi mēen \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) mỳy nīi mēen \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) mỳy sỳn mēen \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) mỳy-ỳyn mēen \_\_\_\_\_

2) Starting with the assumption that today is Sunday, fill in the blanks below:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán aṅ-kháan
- (b) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán sǎw
- (c) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán súk
- (d) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán aa-thīt
- (e) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán phā-hát
- (f) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán can
- (g) \_\_\_\_\_ mēen wán phūt

---

Answers: 1 (a) wán-súk, (b) wán-sǎw, (c) wán-aṅ-kháan, (d) wán-phūt, (e) wán-can, (f) wán-phā-hát, 2 (a) mỳy-hỳy, (b) mỳy-wáan nìi, (c) mỳy-sỳyn, (d) mỳy nìi, (e) mỳy-kōon, (f) mỳy-ỳyn, (g) sīi mỳy-kōon

Cycle 26

M-1

January	mánṅ-koon [mōk-ká-ráa]	ມັງກອນ (ມີກກະຣາ)
February	kum-pháa	ກຸມພາ
March	míi-náa	ມີ າ
April	mée-sǎa	ເມສາ
May	phýt-sá-pháa	ພຶດສະພາ
June	mī-thú-náa	ມິຖຸ າ
July	koo-lā-kót [koo-lā-ká-daa]	ກໍລະກົດ (ກໍຣະກະດາ)
August	sǐṅ-hǎa	ສິງຫາ

January is the first month.	mánṅ-koon mēen dyan thíi nṅṅ,	ມັງກອນແມ່ນເດືອນທີໜຶ່ງ,
What's the next month?	tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
February is the second month.	kum-pháa mēen dyan thíi	ກຸມພາແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີສອງ,
What's the next month?	sǎoṅ, tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
March is the third month	míi-náa mēen dyan thíi sǎam,	ມີ າແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີສາມ,
What's the next month?	tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
April is the fourth month	mée-sǎa mēen dyan thíi	ເມສາແມ່ນເດືອນທີສີ່,
What's the next month?	síi, tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
May is the fifth month.	phýt-sá-pháa mēen dyan thíi	ພຶດສະພາແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີຫ້າ,
What's the next month?	hǎa, tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
June is the sixth month.	mī-thú-náa mēen dyan thíi	ມິຖຸ າແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີຫົກ,
What's the next month?	hók, tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
July is the seventh month.	koo-lā-kót mēen dyan thíi	ກໍລະກົດແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີເຈັດ,
What's the next month?	cét, tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?
August is the eighth month.	sǐṅ-hǎa mēen dyan thíi pēt,	ສິງຫາແມ່ນເດືອນ ທີແປດ,
What's the next month.	tōo paj mēen dyan njǎṅ?	ຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນເດືອນ ຫຍັງ?

M-2

The month after January is February.	lǎṅ-câak dyan mōk-ká-ráa mēen dyan kum-pháa.	ຫລັງຈາກເດືອນ ມັງກອນ ແມ່ ເດືອນ ກຸມພາ.
The month after February is March.	lǎṅ-câak dyan kum-pháa mēen dyan míi-náa.	ຫລັງຈາກເດືອນ ກຸມພາ ແມ່ ເດືອນ ມີ າ.
The month after March is April.	lǎṅ-câak dyan míi-náa mēen dyan mée-sǎa.	ຫລັງຈາກເດືອນ ມີ າແມ່ ເດືອນ ເມສາ.
The month after April is May.	lǎṅ-câak dyan mée-sǎa mēen dyan phýt-sá-pháa.	ຫລັງຈາກເດືອນ ເມສາ ແມ່ ເດືອນ ພຶດສະພາ.
The month after June is March.	lǎṅ-câak dyan phýt-sá-pháa mēen dyan mī-thú-náa.	ຫລັງຈາກເດືອນ ພຶດສະພາ ແມ່ນເດືອນມີຖຸນາ.

**M-3**

January	mán-koon [mōk-ká-ráa]	ມັງກອນ (ມິກກະຣາ)
December	thán-wáa	ທັນ ວາ
November	phā-cík [phýt-sá-cí-kaa]	ພະຈິກ (ພິສຈິກາ)
October	tú-láa	ຕຸລາ
September	kan-njáa	ກັນ ຍາ
August	sǐn-hǎa	ສິງຫາ

The month before January is December.	kōon dyan mán-koon mēen dyan thán-wáa.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ມັງກອນ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ທັນ ວາ.
The month before December is November.	kōon dyan thán-wáa mēen dyan phā-cík.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ທັນ ວາ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ພະຈິກ.
The month before November is October.	kōon dyan phā-cík mēen dyan tú-láa.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ພະຈິກ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ຕຸລາ.
The month before October is September.	kōon dyan tú-láa mēen dyan kan-njáa.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ຕຸລາ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ກັນ ຍາ.
The month before September is August.	kōon dyan kan-njáa mēendyan sǐn-hǎa.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ກັນ ຍາ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ສິງຫາ.
The month before August is July.	kōon dyan sǐn-hǎa mēen dyan koo-lā-kót.	ກ່ອນ ເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ແມ່ນ ເດືອນ ກໍລະກົດ.

**C-1**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. ... is the ... month.<br>What's the next? | A. ...mēen dyan thíi ..., tōo paj<br>mēen dyan njǎn? |
| B. The next is .....                         | B. tōo paj mēen dyan ....                            |

**C-2**

- |                               |                                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. What's the month after ..  | A. lǎn-câak dyan... mēen dyan njǎn? |
| B. The month after ... is ... | B. lǎn-câak dyan ... mēen dyan...   |

**C-3**

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A. What's the month before..? | A. kōon dyan ... mēen dyan njǎn? |
| B. Before ... is ...          | B. kōon dyan ... mēen dyan....   |

NOTES

- 1) The names of the months in Lao are (in order): mán-koon [mōk-ká-ráa], kum-pháa, míi-náa, mée-sǎa, phýt-sá-pháa, mī-thú-náa, koo-lā-kót [koo-lā-ká-daa], sǐn-hǎa, kan-njáa, tú-láa, phā-cík [phýt-sá-cí-kaa], thán-wáa.
- 2) Ordinal numbers (first, second, etc.) are formed by placing thíi before Cardinal numbers (one, two, etc.): thíi nỹn "first", thíi sǎam "third", thíi hók-síp "60th", thíi pēet-síp-kàw "89th" etc.
- 3) tōo paj "next" is a Verb Phrase made up of tōo "to join, extend" + paj "to go forward" (in this type of construction). tōo paj may be used to indicate an extension in time or space. In time expressions it normally refers to future time.

tōo paj mēen dyan njǎn "What month is next?"

- 4) lǎn-câak "after" is a Verb phrase and refers to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

With NP: lǎn-câak dyan mán-koon "After January"

With NP: lǎn-câak kin khâw "After eating"

With S: lân-câak láaw paj tá-lâat.. "After he went to the market...."

- 5) kōon "before, previous" is a verb. It refers only to time.

It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

Before NP: kōon dyan thán-wáa "Before December"

Before VP: kōon paj kin khâw "Before going to eat"

Before S: kōon láaw paj..... "Before he went...."

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks with the name of the month:

(a) dyan thíi hók mēen dyan njǎṅ?

(b) dyan thíi síp - et mēen dyan

(c) dyan thíi sǒṅ mēen dyan

(d) dyan thíi hâa mēen dyan

(e) dyan thíi pēet mēen dyan

(f) dyan thíi sīi mēen dyan

2. Fill in the blanks with the number of the month:

(a) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan míi-náa

(b) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan máṅ-koon [mōk-ká-láa]

(c) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan tú-láa

(d) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan koo-lā-kót [koo-lā-ká-daa]

(e) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan kan-njáa

(f) dyan thíi \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan thán-wáa

3. Fill in the blank with tōo-paj, kōon, or lǎṅ-câak as required:

(a) \_\_\_\_\_ dyan phā-cík mēen dyan tú-láa. [phýt-sá-cí-kaa]

(b) \_\_\_\_\_ dyan kum-pháa mēen dyan míi-náa.

(c) kan-njáa mēen dyan thíi kàw. \_\_\_\_\_ mēen dyan tú-láa.

Answers: 1 (a) mí-thū-náa (b) tú-láa (c) kum-pháa (d) phýt-sá-pháa

(e) síṅ-hǎa (f) mée-sǎa , 2 (a) sǎam (b) nṅ (c) síp (d) cét (e) kàw

(f) síp-sǒṅ, 3 (a) kōon (b) lǎṅ-câak (c) tōo-paj

Cycle 27

M-1

Today	mỳy nìi	ມີ້ນີ້
Birthday	wán k̄əət	ວັນເກີດ
Lao New Year	p̄ii-māj láaw	ປີໃໝ່ລາວ
Independence Day	wán êek-ká-làat	ວັນເອກະລາດ
Constitution Day	wán lāt-thā-thám-mā-núun	ວັນຮັຖຸທັມມະຊູ
Labor Day	wán kam-mā-koon	ວັນກັມມະກອນ

What's the date today?	mỳy nìi mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ມີ້ນີ້ແມ່ນວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?
What's your birth date?	wán k̄əət càw mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ວັນເກີດເຈົ້າແມ່ ວັນ ທີ່ເທົ່າໃດ?
What's the date of the Lao New Year?	p̄ii-māj láaw mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ປີໃໝ່ລາວແມ່ ວັນ ທີ່ເທົ່າໃດ?
What's the date of independence Day?	wán êek-ká-làat mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ວັນເອກະລາດແມ່ ວັນ ທີ່ເທົ່າໃດ?
What's the date of constitution Day?	wán lāt-thā-thám-mā-núun mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ວັນຮັຖຸທັມມະຊູ ແມ່ ວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?
What the date of labor Day?	wán kam-mā-koon mēen wán-thíi thāw daj?	ວັນກັມມະກອນ ແມ່ ວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?



M-2

Born	kêet	ເກີດ
Get married	tēɛŋ-ŋáan	ແຕ່ງງາ
Have a date	míi nāt	ມີ້ດ
Have an appointment	míi nāt	ມີ້ດ
Begin a trip	ôok dœn tháaŋ	ອອກເຕີ ທາງ
Arrive	paj/máa hòot	ໄປ/ມາ ຮອດ

What date were you born?	càw kêet wán-thíi thāw daj?	ເຈົ້າເກີດວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?
What date did you get married on?	càw tēɛŋ-ŋáan wán-thíi thāw daj?	ເຈົ້າແຕ່ງງານວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?
What date do you have a date on?	càw míi nāt wán-thíi thāw daj?	ເຈົ້າມີ້ດວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?
What date did you begin your trip?	càw ôok dœn tháaŋ wán-thíi thāw daj?	ເຈົ້າອອກເຕີ ທາງວັ ທີ່ເທົ່າໃດ?
What date did you arrive there?	càw paj hòot wán-thíi thāw daj?	ເຈົ້າໄປຮອດວັນທີເທົ່າໃດ?

C-1

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| A. What's the date today?         | A. mỳy nìi mēɛn wán-thíi<br>thāw daj?  |
| B. Today is the 14th of May 1970. | B. mỳy nìi mēɛn wán-thíi síp-sīi<br>phýt-sá-pháa pii phán kàw<br>hòoj cét-síp. |

C-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. What date were you born?                                   | A. càw kêet wán-thíi thāw daj?  |
| B. I was born on the fifteenth of January nineteen forty-one. | B. khôj kêet wán-thíi síp hāa<br>mōk-ká-lāa pii phán kàw hòoj<br>sīi-síp-ét |

C-3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. You are going to begin your trip on the ninth, right? | A. càw si ôok dæen tháaŋ wán-thíi kàw, mēen boo?          |
| B. No. I'll begin my trip on the tenth of March.         | B. bōo mēen, khôj si ôok dæen-tháaŋ wán-thíi síp míi-náa. |

**NOTES**

- 1) wán thíi thāw daj (lit. the how many-eth day) "What day?" is used in asking for dates. In the response the sequence of elements is (a) day (b) month (c) year.

Q: càw kêet wán-thíi thāw daj? "When were you born?"

A: khôj kêet wán-thíi síp hâa "I was born January 15, 1941."  
mōk-ká-láa pii phán kàw hòoj  
sīi síp-ét.

(a) day : wán-thíi síp hâa "the fifteenth"

(b) month : mōk-ká-láa "January"

(c) year : pii phán kàw hòoj sīi (Lit. year thousand nine hundred  
síp-ét forty one) "1941"

pii "year" always precedes the designation for year. The year is always given thusly; phán . . . . hòoj . . . (one thousand....hundred ....) and never: síp kàw hòoj (nineteen hundred.....)

APPLICATION

1. On a separate piece of paper write out in full the dates given below, then check your answers:

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| (a) May 7, 1931      | (b) September 23, 1919 |
| (c) February 1, 1947 | (d) December 25, 1963  |
| (e) August 30, 1926  | (f) April 14, 1970     |

---

Answers: 1

- (a) wán-thíi cét dyan phýt-sá-pháa pii phán kàw hòoj sǎam-síp-ét  
(b) wán-thíi sáaw-sǎam dyan kan-njáa pii phán-kàw-hòoj-síp-kàw  
(c) wán-thíi n̄ȳn dyan kum-pháa pii phán kàw hòoj sīi-síp-cét  
(d) wán-thíi sáaw-hâa dyan-thán-wāa pii phán kàw hòoj hók-síp-sǎam  
(e) wán-thíi sǎm-síp dyan s̄n̄-hǎa pii phán kàw hòoj sáaw-hók  
(f) wán-thíi síp sīi mēe-sǎa pii phán kàw hòoj cét-síp

Cycle 28

M-1

Day	mỳy	ມື້
Year	pii	ປີ
Week	aa-thīt	ອາທິດ
Occasion	oo-kâat	ໂອກາດ
Time, when	wée-láa	ເວລາ
Hour	sūa-móoᅇ	ຊົ່ວໂມງ
Month	dyan	ເດືອນ

When(what day) will you go?	càw si paj mỳy daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປມື້ໃດ?
When (what year) will you go?	càw si paj pii daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປປີໃດ?
When (which week) will you go?	càw si paj aa-thīt daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປອາທິດໃດ?
When (on what occasion) will you go?	càw si paj oo-kâat daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປໂອກາດໃດ?
When will you go?	càw si paj wée-láa daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປເວລາໃດ?
Which hour will you go?	càw si paj sūa-móoᅇ daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປຊົ່ວໂມງໃດ?
What month will you go?	càw si paj dyan daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປເດືອນ ໃດ?

M-2

Second hour	sūa-móoŋ thíi sǎoŋ	ຊົ່ວໂມງທີສອງ
Next week	aa-thīt nâa	ອາທິດຫ້າ
Next year	pii nâa	ປີຫ້າ
Tomorrow	mỳy-ȳyn	ມື້ອື່ນ
On the occasion of	náj oo-kâat	ໃ ໂອກາດ
That Luang festival	bun thàat-lǔang	ບຸ ທາດຫລວງ
When you arrive	wée-láa càw máa hòot	ເວລາເຈົ້າມາຮອດ

I will go at the second hour.	khôj si paj sūa-móoŋ thíi sǎoŋ.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຊົ່ວໂມງທີສອງ.
I will go next week.	khôj si paj aa-thīt nâa.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປອາທິດຫ້າ.
I will go next year.	khôj si paj pii nâa.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປປີຫ້າ.
I will go tomorrow.	khôj si paj mỳy-ȳyn	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປມື້ອື່ນ.
I will go on the occasion of That Luang festival.	khôj si paj nám oo-kâat bun thàat-luang	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປໃ ໂອກາດ ບຸ ທາດຫລວງ.
I will go when you arrive.	khôj si paj wée-láa càw máa hòot.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປເວລາເຈົ້າມາຮອດ.

M-3

Enter school	khâw hóoŋ-hían	ເຂົ້າໂຮງຮຽນ
Give birth	ôok lùuk	ອອກລູກ
Report to the police	cèeŋ tam-lúat	ແຈ້ງຕໍາຫລວດ
Return (it) to him	aw khýyn hâj láaw	ເອົາຄື ໃຫ້ລາວ

When will you enter school?	mỳy daj càw si khâw hóoŋ-hían?	ມື້ໃດເຈົ້າສິເຂົ້າໂຮງຮຽນ?
When will you have you baby?	mỳy daj càw si ôok lùuk?	ມື້ໃດເຈົ້າສິອອກລູກ?
When will you report to the police.	mỳy daj càw si cèeŋ tam-lúat.	ມື້ໃດເຈົ້າສິແຈ້ງຕໍາຫລວດ?
When will you return it to him?	mỳy daj càw si aw khýyn hâj láaw?	ມື້ໃດເຈົ້າສິເອົາຄືນໃຫ້ລາວ.

M-4

To go on a pleasure trip (or walk)	paj thīaw	ໄປທ່ຽວ
To teach	sǒon	ສອນ

What are you going to do today?	mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎṅ?	ມື້ນີ້ເຈົ້າສິເຮັດຫຍັງ?
Where are you going to go this week?	aa-thīt nìi càw si paj sǎj?	ອາທິດນີ້ເຈົ້າສິໄປໃສ?
What are you going to study this hour?	sūa-móon nìi càw si hían njǎṅ?	ຊົ່ວໂມງນີ້ເຈົ້າສິຮຽນຫຍັງ?
Where are you staying at the present time?	wée-láa nìi càw phāk jūu sǎj?	ເວລານີ້ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ?
Where is he going to go on a pleasure trip this year?	pii nìi láaw si paj thīaw sǎj?	ປີນີ້ລາວສິໄປທ່ຽວໃສ?
Who is she going to teach this Monday?	mỳy wán-can nìi láaw si sǒon phǎj?	ມື້ວັນຈັນນີ້ລາວສິສອນ ໃຜ?

M- 5

To fish	týk-bét	ຕຶກເບັດ
Picnic	kin-khâw pāa	ກິ ເຂົ້າປ່າ
Seashore	khéem thā-lée	ແຄມທະເລ
Sightseeing	thāt-sá-náa-coon	ທັສ າຈອ
Foreign country	tāaη pá-thèet	ຕ່າງປະເທດ

This week I'm going to go fishing.	aa-thīt nīi khōj si paj týk-bét.	ອາທິດນີ້ຂ້ອຍສິໄປຕຶກເບັດ.
Next week I'm going to go picnicking.	aa-thīt nāa khōj si paj kin-khâw pāa.	ອາທິດຫ້າຂ້ອຍສິໄປກິ ເຂົ້າປ່າ.
This weekend I'm going to go to the seashore.	thàaj aa-thīt nīi khōj si paj khéem thā-lée.	ທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້ຂ້ອຍສິໄປແຄມທະເລ.
Next month I'm going to go sightseeing.	dyan nāa khōj si paj thāt-sá-náa-coon.	ເດືອນ ຫ້າຂ້ອຍສິໄປທັສ າຈອ .
In two weeks I'm going to go abroad.	îik sǒວη aa-thīt khōj si paj tāaη pá-thèet.	ອີກສອງອາທິດຂ້ອຍສິໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ.



**C-1**

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. What day are you going? | A. càw si paj mỳy daj?  |
| B. I am going today.       | B. khôj si paj mỳy nìi. |

**C-2**

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| A. Is she going?      | A. láaw si paj boo? |
| B. Yes, she is going. | B. paj.             |

**C-3**

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. What are you going to do today?   | A. mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎṅ?          |
| B. Today I'm going to go picnicking. | B. mỳy nìi khôj si paj kin-khâw pāa. |

**C-4**

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| A. What year will you complete your studies? | A. pii daj càw si hían sǎm-lēt?  |
| B. I'll complete my studies next year.       | B. khôj si hían sǎm-lēt pii nâa. |

**NOTES**

- 1) Time Expressions, such as aa-thīt nâa, etc. may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position with little or no difference in meaning. Their position is determined by the type of sentence they occur in. (1) When they occur in sentences with njǎṅ or sǎj as question words, they are in sentence initial position:

Q : mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎṅ? "What are you going to do today?"

A : mỳy nìi khôj si paj hēt kaan "Today I'm going to go to work."

- 2) When they occur in other types of sentences, they may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position:

Q : mỳy daj càw si khâw hóoṅ-hían? "When will you start school?"

Q : càw si khâw hóoṅ-hían mỳy daj? "When will you start school?"

A : khôj si khâw hóoṅ-hían mỳy-ṽyn "I'm starting tomorrow."

A : mỳy-ṽyn "Tomorrow".

mỳy-ṽyn khôj si khâw hóoṅ-hían might occur in a statement, but it would not occur in a response to a question.

- 3) daj "which, what" may occur after time words like mỳy "day", aa-thīt "week",

pii "year" etc. with the meaning "one particular unit of time": mýy daj "what day? "  
pii daj "which year?", etc.... or it may occur after wée-láa "time" with the meaning  
 "indefinite time": wée-láa daj "When (what time)"

4) wée-láa "time" is used in the following senses:

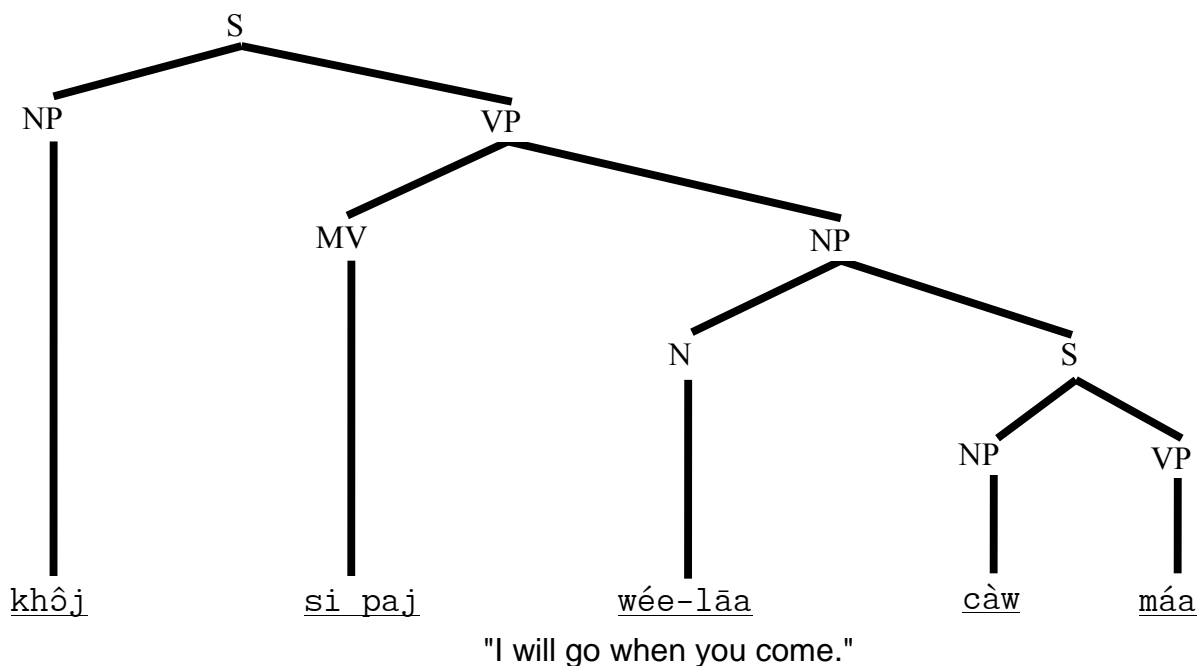
(a) a time for doing something

wée-láa kin khâw "time to eat"

(b) a particular moment or period of time

wée-láa láaw máa hòot "when (the time ) he arrived"

In this last sense it may serve as a connector between the Main Sentence and an included sentence as illustrated in the example below:



kōon "before" and lâṅ-câak "after" can replace wée-láa in the construction above

**APPLICATION**

1. In the sentence khôj sí paj pii nâa, pii nâa is (a) AP (b) NP (c) MV (d) time expression.
2. A possible answer to the question càw si máa pii daj? would be (a) aa-thīt nâa (b) pii daj (c) bōo máa (d) pii nâa
3. Which of the following are acceptable answers to the question càw si paj wée-láa daj? (a) mỳy-ỳyn, (b) náj oo-kâat bun thàat-lǔaŋ (c) aa-thīt nâa (d) sūa mōoŋ thíi sǒoŋ (e) all of these.
4. Give reasonable answers to the following questions:
  - (a) càw si máa wée-láa daj? (b) dyan nâa òaj càw si paj sǎj?
  - (c) aa-thīt nâa càw si paj tát-phǒm jūu hàn tát-phǒm bōo? (d) láaw si paj mỳy daj? (e) càw si sòok-hǎa phyan láaw wée-láa daj?
5. Using wée-láa as a connective, combine the following pairs of sentences.
  - (a) khôj si paj \_\_\_\_\_ càw máa hòot
  - (b) láaw si paj \_\_\_\_\_ khá-càw ôok dœn-tháaŋ
  - (c) láaw si paj thóo-lā-sáp \_\_\_\_\_ khá-càw phāk sáv-mýaj
  - (d) khôj si paj kin khâw \_\_\_\_\_ nāk-hían bōo máa hían
  - (e) dék-nòoj phūu nàn lín \_\_\_\_\_ mēe láaw fáj wīt-thā-njū
  - (f) láaw si sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek \_\_\_\_\_ phōo láaw paj mýaŋ-nòok
6. Repeat No. 5 using kōon as a connective.
8. Repeat No. 5 using lǎŋ-câak as a connective.

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2d, 3e, 4(a) khôj si máa aathīt nâa (or) aathīt nâa, etc. (b) dyan nâa láaw si paj... (c) bōo, si bōo paj (or) si paj (d) mỳy-ỳyn (or) láaw si paj mỳy-ỳyn (e) dyan nâa (or) khôj si sòok-hǎa phyan láaw dyan nâa 5 put wée-láa in the spaces between sentences 6 put kōon in the spaces 7 put lǎŋ-câak in the spaces.

Cycle 29

M-1

Eight	pêet	ເປດ
Ten	síp	ສິບ
Eight, half	pêet, khēṅ	ເປດ, ເຄິ່ງ
Nine, fifteen	kàw, síp-hâa	ເກົ້າ, ສິບຫ້າ
Seven, ten of	cét, nján síp	ເຈັດ, ຍັງສິບ
Five, twenty	hâa, sáaw	ຫ້າ, ຊາວ
Three, 15 of	săam, nján síp-hâa	ສາມ, ຍັງສິບຫ້າ
Four, ten	sīi, síp	ສີ່, ສິບ
Six, half	hók, khēṅ	ຫົກ, ເຄິ່ງ

It's eight o'clock.	diaw-nìi pêet móṅ.	ດຽວນີ້ເປດໂມງ.
It's ten o'clock.	diaw-nìi síp móṅ.	ດຽວນີ້ສິບໂມງ.
It's half past eight	diaw-nìi pêet móṅ khēṅ.	ດຽວນີ້ເປດໂມງເຄິ່ງ.
It's nine fifteen.	diaw-nìi kàw móṅ síp-hâa.	ດຽວນີ້ເກົ້າໂມງສິບຫ້າ.
<b>It's ten to seven (6:50).</b>	diaw-nìi cet móṅ nján síp.	ດຽວນີ້ເຈັດໂມງຍັງສິບ.
It's 5:20.	diaw-nìi hâa móṅ sáaw.	ດຽວນີ້ຫ້າໂມງຊາວ.
It's 2:45.	diaw-nìi săam móṅ nján síp-hâa.	ດຽວນີ້ສາມໂມງຍັງສິບຫ້າ.
It's 4:10.	diaw-nìi sīi móṅ síp.	ດຽວນີ້ສີ່ໂມງສິບ.
It's 6:30.	diaw-nìi hók móṅ khēṅ.	ດຽວນີ້ຫົກໂມງເຄິ່ງ.

M-2

What time is it?	diaw-nìi cák móṅ lèew?	ດຽວນີ້ ຈັກໂມງແລ້ວ?
------------------	------------------------	--------------------

**C-1**

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| A. What time is it? | A. diaw-nìi cák mớ๑ lèεw? |
| B. It's .....       | B. diaw-nìi .....         |

NOTES

- 1) mớ๑ "o'clock" is used in asking and telling time.

Asking the time:

diaw-nìi + Number (Q) + mớ๑ lèεw

diaw-nìi      cák      mớ๑ lèεw

"What time is it?"

- 2) Telling time:

[diaw-nìi] + Number + mớ๑ + part of hour

diaw-nìi      pêεt      mớ๑      síp hâa

(Now it's 8 o'clock15)

"It's 8:15."

If it is after the half hour, the number of minutes remaining before the hour is indicated by putting njáj "yet" after the hour followed by the number of minutes remaining:

síp      mớ๑      njáj      síp

(ten      o'clock      yet      ten)

"10 minutes to ten."

APPLICATION

1. Using the numbers as a guide, complete the following time expressions:

(a) diaw-nìi p̄ēt m̄oŋ \_\_\_\_\_ (8:15)

(b) diaw-nìi \_\_\_\_\_ m̄oŋ (9:00)

(c) diaw-nìi síp m̄oŋ \_\_\_\_\_ síp (9:50)

(d) diaw-nìi sīi m̄oŋ \_\_\_\_\_ (4:30)

(e) diaw-nìi \_\_\_\_\_ m̄oŋ l̄εw? (What time is it?)

(f) diaw-nìi h̄aa m̄oŋ \_\_\_\_\_ (5:10)

(g) diaw-nìi s̄oŋ m̄oŋ nj̄aŋ \_\_\_\_\_ (1:35)

(h) diaw-nìi cét m̄oŋ \_\_\_\_\_ (7:30)

2. Look at your watch and write out in full the correct time on this line, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

---

Answers: 1 (a) síp-h̄aa, (b) k̄aw, (c) nj̄aŋ, (d) kh̄eŋ, (e) cák, (f) síp,  
(g) s̄aaw-h̄aa, (h) s̄aaw, 2 You'll have to decide what the correct answer to  
this is yourself.

Cycle 30

M-1

Eight, morning	pêet, sàw	ແປດ, ເຊົ້າ
12, noon	síp-sǎwng, thīaŋ	ສິບສອງ, ທ່ຽງ
2, afternoon	sǎwng, bāaj	ສອງ, ບ່າຍ
5, evening	hāa, léeng	ຫ້າ, ແລງ
9, night	kàw, kaan khýyn	ເກົ້າ, ກາງຄື
11, half	síp-ét, khēng	ສິບເອັດ, ເຄິ່ງ

I go shopping at 8 in the morning.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng pêet mǎwng sàw.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງແປດໂມງເຊົ້າ.
I go shopping at 12 noon.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng síp sǎwng mǎwng thīaŋ.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງສິບສອງໂມງທ່ຽງ.
I go shopping at 2 in the afternoon.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng bāaj sǎwng mǎwng.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງບ່າຍສອງໂມງ.
I go shopping at 5 in the evening.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng hāa mǎwng léeng.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງຫ້າໂມງແລງ.
I go shopping at 9 in the evening.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng kàw mǎwng kaan khýyn.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງເກົ້າໂມງກາງຄື .
I go shopping at 11:30.	khôj paj sỳy khǎwng síp-ét mǎwng khēng.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງສິບເອັດໂມງເຄິ່ງ.

M-2

School	hóoŋ-hían	ໂຮງຮຽນ
Work	hēt-kaan	ເຮັດກາ
Shop	sỳy khǎoŋ	ຊື້ຂອງ
Have coffee	kin kaa-fée	ກິ ກາເຟ
Drink tea	dỹm nàm-sáa	ດື່ມນ້ຳຊາ
Sleep	nóoŋ	ອ
Swim	lǎoŋ nàm	ລອຍ ຈ້

What time do you go to school?      cào paj hóoŋ-hían cák      ເຈົ້າໄປໂຮງຮຽນ ຈັກໂມງ?  
móoŋ?

What time do you go to work?      cào paj hēt-kaan cák      ເຈົ້າໄປເຮັດກາ ຈັກໂມງ?  
móoŋ?

What time did you go shop?      cào paj sỳy khǎoŋ cák      ເຈົ້າໄປຊື້ຂອງຈັກໂມງ?  
móoŋ?

What time do you go to drink coffee?      cào paj kin kaa-fée      ເຈົ້າໄປກິ ກາເຟຈັກໂມງ?  
cák móoŋ?

What time do you go to drink tea?      cào paj dỹm nàm-sáa      ເຈົ້າໄປດື່ມນ້ຳຊາຈັກໂມງ?  
cák móoŋ?

What time do you go to bed?      cào paj nóoŋ cák móoŋ?      ເຈົ້າໄປ ອ ຈັກໂມງ?

What time do you go to swim?      cào paj lǎoŋ nàm cák      ເຈົ້າໄປລອຍ ຈ້ຈັກໂມງ?  
móoŋ?



M-3

School	hóoŋ-hían	ໂຮງຮຽນ
9:00 a.m.	kàw móoŋ sàw	ເກົ້າໂມງເຊົ້າ
To work	hēt-kaan	ເຮັດກາ
8:30 a.m.	pêet móoŋ khēŋ	ແປດໂມງເຄິ່ງ
	toon sàw	ຕອນ ເຊົ້າ
To shop	sỳy khǒoŋ	ຊື້ຂອງ
11 a.m.	síp-ét móoŋ sàw	ສິບເອັດໂມງເຊົ້າ
Drink coffee	kin kaa-fée	ກິ ກາເຟ
3 p.m.	bāaj sǎam móoŋ	ບ່າຍສາມໂມງ
Drink tea	dỳm nàm-sáa	ດື່ມນ້ຳຊາ
4:30 p.m.	bāaj sīi móoŋ khēŋ	ບ່າຍສີ່ໂມງເຄິ່ງ
To sleep	nóoŋ	ອ
10:00 p.m.	síp móoŋ kaan khýyn	ສິບໂມງກາງຄື
Go to the movies	paj bēŋ síi-née	ໄປເບິ່ງຊິເນ, ຮູບເງົາ
7:00 p.m.	cét móoŋ léŋ	ເຈັດໂມງແລງ
Go swimming	paj lóoŋ nàm	ໄປລອຍ ນ້ຳ
12 noon	síp-sǒoŋ móoŋ thīaŋ	ສິບສອງໂມງທ່ຽງ

I go to school at 9:00 a.m.	khôj paj hóoŋ-hían kàw móoŋ sàw.	ຂ້ອຍໄປໂຮງຮຽນ ເກົ້າໂມງເຊົ້າ.
I go to work at 8:30 a.m.	khôj paj hēt kaan pêet móoŋ khēŋ toon sàw.	ຂ້ອຍໄປເຮັດກາ ແປດໂມງເຄິ່ງຕອນເຊົ້າ.
I went shopping at 11 a.m.	khôj paj sỳy khǒoŋ síp-ét móoŋ sàw.	ຂ້ອຍໄປຊື້ຂອງສິບເອັດໂມງເຊົ້າ.

Continued...

**M-3 Continued**

I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.	khôj paj nóon síp móonj kaan khýyn.	ຂ້ອຍໄປ ອ ສິບໂມງ ກາງຄື .
I went to the movies at 7:00 p.m.	khôj paj bān sīi-née cét móonj léen.	ຂ້ອຍໄປເບິ່ງຊິເນເຈັດ ໂມງແລງ.
I go swimming at twelve noon.	khôj paj lóoj nām síp sǎonj móonj thīan.	ຂ້ອຍໄປລອຍ ຈໍ້ ສິບສອງໂມງທຸ່ງ.

**C-1**

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| A. What time you go to swimming? | A. càw si paj lóoj nām<br>cák móonj?       |
| B. I will go at quarter to 9.    | B. khôj si paj kàw móonj<br>njánj síp hāa. |

**C-2**

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. Where did he go?           | A. láaw paj sǎj?            |
| B. He went to have coffee.    | B. láaw paj kin kaa-fée     |
| A. What time did he go?       | A. láaw paj cák móonj?      |
| B. He went at ten past eight. | B. láaw paj pēet móonj síp. |

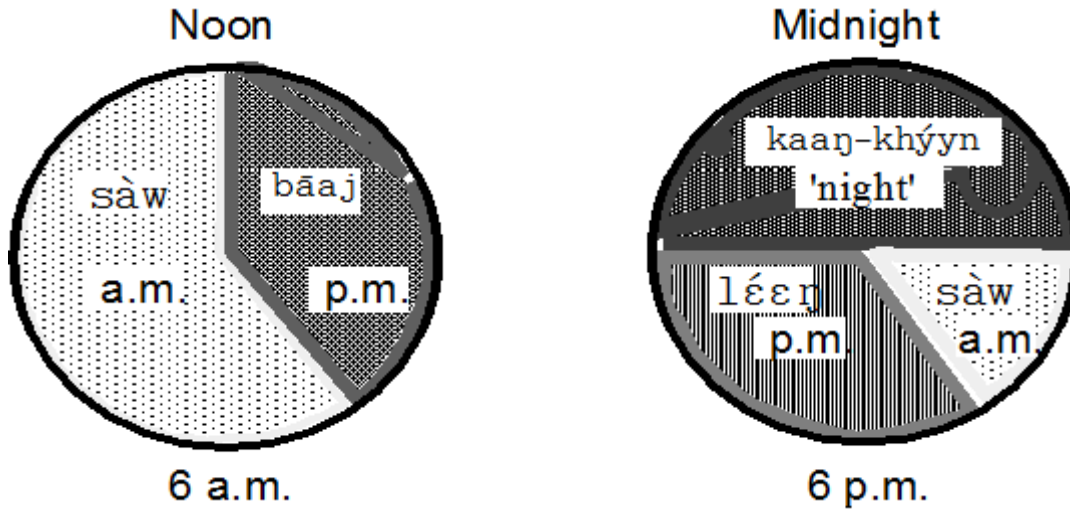
NOTES

- 1 Words designating the part of the day like sàw "a.m." are usually placed after móon in time expressions, thus

cét móon sàw "7 a.m."      síp sǒon móon thian "12 noon".

hâa móon léen "5 p.m."      síp-ét móon kaan khýyn "11 p.m."

The approximate period of time referred to by such terms as sàw, etc. is indicated on the clock faces below.



APPLICATION

1. Complete the following examples:

- (a) 9:00 a. m kàw móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) 1:30 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ móoŋ khēŋ
- (c) 5:00 p.m. hâa móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) 12:00 síp sǎoŋ móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (e) 4:00 p.m. bāaj sīi \_\_\_\_\_
- (f) 11:00 a. m. síp-ét móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (g) 10:00 p.m. síp móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (h) 8:00 p.m. pēt móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (i) 6:50 cét móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_ síp
- (j) 3:20 p.m. bāaj sǎam móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (k) 10:30 a.m. síp móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_ toon sàw
- (l) 12:15 p.m. síp sǎoŋ móoŋ \_\_\_\_\_ toon thīaŋ

2. Complete the blanks with the time that you normally do the things indicated:

- (a) khôj paj hóoŋ-hían \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) khôj paj kin kaa-fée \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) khôj paj sỳy khǎoŋ \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) khôj paj nóon \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a) sàw (b) bāaj (c) léεŋ (d) thīaŋ (e) móoŋ (f) sàw  
(g) kaan-khýyn, léεŋ (h) léεŋ (i) njáŋ (j) sáaw (k) khēŋ  
(l) síp-hâa 2 You will have to check own answers here.

Cycle 31

M-1

To rest	sáw-m̄yaj	ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ
Minute	náa-thíi	າທີ
Ten	síp	ສິບ
To take vacation	phāk-phōn	ພັກຜ່ອ
Week	aa-thīt	ອາທິດ
Three	sǎam	ສາມ
Day	m̄y	ມື້
Four	sīi	ສີ່
Month	dyan	ເດືອນ
Two	sǒn	ສອງ
Year	pii	ປີ
Six	hók	ຫົກ
Second	wī-náa-thíi	ວິ າທີ
Thirty-five	sǎam-síp-hâa	ສາມສິບຫ້າ
Hour	sūa-móon	ຊົ່ວໂມງ
Half	khēn	ເຄິ່ງ
One and a half hours	sūa-móon khēn	ຊົ່ວໂມງເຄິ່ງ

He rested ten minutes.

láaw sáw-m̄aj síp  
náa-thíi.

ລາວເຊົາເມື່ອຍສິບນາທີ.

He took three weeks  
vacation.

láaw phāk-phōon sǎam  
aa-thīt.

ລາວພັກຜ່ອນ ສາມອາທິດ.

He was sick for four  
days.

láaw bōw sá-baaj sīi mỳy.

ລາວບໍ່ສະບາຍສີ່ມື້.

He spent six years  
abroad.

láaw jūu m̄yaŋ nòok hók  
pii.

ລາວຢູ່ເມືອງ ອກຫົກປີ.

He was in line for one  
and a half hour.

láaw khâw thǎew  
sūa-móoŋ khēŋ.

ລາວເຂົ້າແຖວຊົ່ວໂມງເຄິ່ງ.

M-2

To be in Laos, year	jūu mýaᅇ láaw, pii	ຢູ່ເມືອງລາວ, ປີ
To lose one's way	lǒᅇ tháaᅇ	ຫລົງທາງ
Hour	sūa-móoᅇ	ຊົ່ວໂມງ
To read	āan	ອ່າ
Lesson	bót-hían	ບົດຮຽນ
Minute	náa-thíi	າທິ
To travel	dəən tháaᅇ	ເດີ ທາງ
Week	aa-thīt	ອາທິດ
To fight a war	tii-sók	ຕີເສິກ
Day	mỳy	ມື້

How many years was he in Laos?	láaw jūu mýaᅇ láaw cák pii?	ລາວຢູ່ເມືອງລາວຈັກປີ?
--------------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------

How many hours was he lost?	láaw lǒᅇ tháaᅇ cák sūa-móoᅇ?	ລາວຫລົງທາງຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ?
-----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------

How many minutes did he read the lessons?	láaw āan bót-hían cák náa-thíi?	ລາວອ່າ ບົດຮຽນ ຈັກ າທິ?
---	---------------------------------	------------------------

How many weeks did he travel?	láaw dəən tháaᅇ cák aa-thīt?	ລາວເດີ ທາງຈັກ ອາທິດ?
-------------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------

M-3

To rest, take vacation	phāk-phōon	ພັກຜ່ອນ
To practice	fýk-hát	ຝຶກຫັດ
To leave	pa' wàj	ປະໄວ
Car	lōt	ລົດ
To delay, be delayed	sāk-sàa	ຂັກຂ້າ
To imprison	khǎŋ	ຂັງ
To control	khùap-khúm	ຄວບຄຸມ

How long will you take for vacation?	càw si phāk-phōon don paan-daj?	ເຈົ້າສິພັກຜ່ອນດິ ປາ ໃດ?
How long will you practice?	càw si fýk-hát don paan-daj?	ເຈົ້າສິຝຶກຫັດດິ ປາ ໃດ?
How long will you leave your car here?	càw si pá lōt càw wàj nìi don paan-daj?	ເຈົ້າສິປະລົດເຈົ້າໄວ້ນີ້ດິ ປາ ໃດ?
How long will you be delayed?	càw si sāk-sàa don paan-daj?	ເຈົ້າສິຂັກຂ້າດິ ປາ ໃດ?
How long will you keep him under control?	càw si khùap-khúm láaw don paan-daj?	ເຈົ້າສິຄວບຄຸມລາວດິ ປາ ໃດ?

C-1

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A. What is he going to do?            | A. láaw si hēt njǎŋ?               |
| B. He is going to (take a rest.)      | B. láaw si [sáw-mýaj]              |
| A. How many (minutes) will he (rest)? | A. láaw [sáw-mýaj] cák [náa-thíi]? |
| B. (Twenty minutes).                  | B. [sáaw náa-thíi].                |

C-2

- |                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. What are they going to do? | A. khá-càw si hēt njǎj? |
| B. They are going to (take a  | B. khá-càw si           |



- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| vacation.)                      | [paj phāk-phōn]                                |
| A. How long will they be going? | A. khá-càw si [paj<br>phāk-phōn] don paan-daj? |
| B. (Two weeks)                  | B. [sǒŋ aa-thīt].                              |

NOTES

- 1). The following words are used for various periods of time: pii "year", dyan "month", aa-thīt "week", mỳy "day", sūa-móŋ "hour", náa-thīi "minute", and wī-náa-thīi "second." If one wishes to find out precisely how many units of time (hour, minute, etc.) were used in a particular activity cák + Time Unit is used: cák aa-thīt "how many weeks", etc. The question can be put in a more general and less precise way by saying don paan-daj (lit. long to what extent) "how long?" don paan-daj is always used in situations in which the speaker has no idea how long a time was involved (hence no knowledge of what time units the response might be given in.)
- 2) khēŋ "half" may occur before or after a Time Unit. When it occurs before the unit it means "half of the unit": khēŋ mỳy "half a day", khēŋ pii "half a year", etc.

When khēŋ occurs after a time unit, it means "one and one half units":

sūa-móŋ khēŋ "one and a half hours", náa-thīi khēŋ "one and a half minutes", etc.

If numbers precede a time unit and khēŋ follows it, khēŋ means "one half is added to the other number":

săam mỳy khēŋ "3 1/2 days", hók pii khēŋ "6 1/2 years." etc.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below with the correct information:
- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ n̄ȳŋ míi síp-sǎoŋ dyan.
  - (b) náa-thíi n̄ȳŋ míi 60 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (c) \_\_\_\_\_ n̄ȳŋ míi 24 s̄ua-móoŋ
  - (d) dyan n̄ȳŋ míi 30 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (e) 60 wī-náa-thíi mēen 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (f) 4 s̄ua-móoŋ mēen 240 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (g) 12 dyan mēen 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (h) 7 m̄ȳy mēen 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (i) m̄ȳy n̄ȳŋ míi 86,400 \_\_\_\_\_
  - (j) \_\_\_\_\_ s̄ua-móoŋ (how many hours?).
  - (k) \_\_\_\_\_ paan-daj (how long?).
  - (l) \_\_\_\_\_ s̄ua-móoŋ (half an hour).
  - (m) kàw m̄ȳy \_\_\_\_\_ (9 1/2 days)
  - (n) pii \_\_\_\_\_ (1 1/2 years).

---

Answers: 1 (a) pii (b) wī-náa-thíi (c) m̄ȳy (d) m̄ȳy (e) náa-thíi  
(f) náa-thíi (g) pii (h) aa-thít (i) wī-náa-thíi (j) cák (k) don  
(l) khēŋ (m) khēŋ (n) khēŋ

Cycle 32

M-1

To have time, enough	míi wée-láa, phóo	ມີເວລາ, ບໍ່
To use	sàj	ໃຊ້
To save	phéεη wàj	ເພງໄວ້
To lose time, because of	sǎa wée-láa, njòon	ເສັງເວລາ, ຍ້ອນ

What did you use this time for?	càw sàj wée-láa nìi hēt njǎη?	ເຈົ້າໃຊ້ເວລານີ້ເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What did you save the time for?	càw phéεη wée-láa wàj hēt njǎη?	ເຈົ້າເພງເວລາໄວ້ເຮັດຫຍັງ?
What caused you to lose time?	càw sǎa wée-láa njòon njǎη?	ເຈົ້າເສັງເວລາຍ້ອນຫຍັງ?

M-2

To cook	khúa-kin	ຄົວກິ
To fix, motor bike	pɛɛŋ, lōt-cák	ແປງ, ລົດຈັກ
To rest	sáw-m̄yaj	ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ
To look for, friend	sòok-hǎa, ph̄yan	ຊອກຫາ, ເພື່ອນ

I don't have enough time to cook.      khôj bōw míi wée-láa phów sǎm-lāp khúa-kin.      ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີເວລາພໍສໍາລັບຄົວກິ .

I used this time to fix the motorbike.      khôj sàj wée-láa nìi pɛɛŋ lōt-cák.      ຂ້ອຍໃຊ້ເວລານີ້ແປງລົດຈັກ.

I saved this time for resting.      khôj phéɛŋ wée-láa nìi wáj sáw-m̄yaj.      ຂ້ອຍແຫງເວລານີ້ໄວ້ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ.

M-3

Study, week	hían nǎṅ-sǎy, aa-thīt	ຮຽນ ຫ້າສິ້, ອາທິດ
Cook, hour	khúa-kin, sūa-móoṅ	ຄົວກິນ, ຊົ່ວໂມງ
Look for, day	sòok-hǎa, mỳy	ຊອກຫາ, ມື້
Fix the car, hour	pɛɛṅ lōt, sūa-móoṅ	ແປງລົດ, ຊົ່ວໂມງ
Lose time,	sǎa wée-láa,	ເສັງເວລາ,
Fix, television	pɛɛṅ, thoo-lā-thāt	ແປງ, ໂທລະທັດ

How many weeks do you have for studying?	càw míi wée-láa hían nǎṅ-sǎy cák aa-thīt?	ເຈົ້າມີເວລາຮຽນ ຫ້າສິ້ຈັກອາທິດ?
How many hours do you have for cooking?	càw míi wée-láa khúa-kin cák sūa-móoṅ?	ເຈົ້າມີເວລາຄົວກິນ ຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ?
How many hours did you use fixing your car?	càw sàj wée-láa pɛɛṅ lōt cák sūa-móoṅ?	ເຈົ້າໃຊ້ເວລາແປງ ລົດຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ?

M-4

Have, month, eight	míi, dyan, pêet	ມີ, ເດືອນ , ແປດ
Rest, minute	sáw-m̄yāj, náa-thíi	ເຊົາເມື່ອຍ, ນາທີ
Fifteen	síp-hâa	ສິບຫ້າ
Use, eat	sàj, kin-khâw	ໃຊ້, ກິ ເຂົ້າ
Thirty	săam-síp	ສາມສິບ
Explain, matter, twenty	sìi-cεεη, lỳaη, sáaw	ຊີ້ແຈງ, ເລື້ອງ, ຊາວ
Fifteen	síp-hâa	ສິບຫ້າ
Wait for, five	thâa, hâa	ຖ້າ, ຫ້າ

You have eight months to study Lao.	càw míi wée-láa hían pháa-săa láaw pêet dyan.	ເຈົ້າມີເວລາສູງ ພາສາ ລາວແປດເດືອນ .
You have fifteen minutes to rest.	càw míi wée-láa sáw-m̄yā síp-hâa náa-thíi	ເຈົ້າມີເວລາເຊົາເມື່ອຍ ສິບຫ້າ າທີ.
You took thirty minutes to eat.	càw sàj wée-láa kin-khâw săam-síp náa-thíi.	ເຈົ້າໃຊ້ເວລາກິ ເຂົ້າ ສາມສິບ າທີ.
You wasted fifteen minutes cooking.	càw sĩa wée-láa khúa-kin síp-hâa náa-thíi.	ເຈົ້າເສັງເວລາຄົວກິ ສິບຫ້າ າທີ.

**C-1**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. You don't have enough time for what? | A. càw bōo míi wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp njǎŋ?      |
| B. I don't have enough time to cook.    | B. khôj bōo míi wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp khúa-kin. |

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. How much time did you waste looking for him? | A. càw sǎa wée-láa sòok-hǎa láaw cák náa-thíi? |
| B. I wasted forty-five minutes.                 | B. khôj sǎa wée-láa sīi-síp-hâa náa-thíi       |

**C-1**

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| A. Do you have enough time?        | A. càw míi wée-láa phóo bōo?                 |
| B. Enough time for what?           | B. wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp njǎŋ?                |
| A. For (cooking).                  | A. sǎm-lāp [khúa-kin].                       |
| B. Oh yes, I have tens of minutes. | B. phóo, khôj míi wée-láa lǎaj síp náa-thíi. |

NOTES

- 1) As was indicated in Cycle 28, wée-láa "time" may be followed by VP indicating some kind of activity: wée-láa kin khâw "time to eat / for eating". When wée-láa is followed by phóo "enough, sufficient", sǎm-lāp "for the purpose of" occurs before the VP of Purpose:

míi wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp khúa-kin (have time enough for (to) cook)  
 "have enough time to cook"

In questions the VP of purpose is replaced by njǎŋ,

míi wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp njǎŋ? "You have sufficient time for what?"

- 2) njòon "because of, due to" + VP of Activity is used to provide an explanation for some action:

khôj sǎa wée-láa njòon sòok-hǎa phyan khôj (I lost time due to looking for my friend.)

"I spent time (in vain) looking for my friend."





APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

- (a) khôj míi wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_(fix motorbike)
- (b) càw bōo míi wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_(to rest)
- (c) láaw sǎa wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_thâa ph̄yan láaw (due to)
- (d) khôj bōo mīi wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_sǎm-lāp khúa-kin (enough time)
- (e) càw sàj wée-láa kin-khâw cák \_\_\_\_\_? (how many minutes)
- (f) càw míi wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_hók dyan (study Lao)
- (g) wée-láa \_\_\_\_\_njǎŋ (for what?)
- (h) càw sǎa wée-láa sòok-hǎa khón sàj càw \_\_\_\_\_(how long?)

2. Answer the following questions:

- (a) mỳy-wáan-nìi càw sàj wée-láa hían pháa-sǎa láaw don paan-daj?
- (b) mỳy-ŷyn càw si míi wée-láa nóon cák sūa-móon?
- (c) wán sǎw lèew nìi (Last Saturday) càw jyyn thâa mía càw don paan-daj?
- (d) mỳy-ŷyn càw si míi wée-láa phóo sǎm-lāp hían pháa-sǎa láaw bōo?
- (e) càw sǎa wée-láa njòn njǎŋ?

---

Answers: 1(a) pεεŋ lōt-cák (b) sǎw-m̄yaj (c) njòn (d) phóo (e) náa-thíi  
(f) hían pháa-sǎa láaw (g) sǎm-lāp (h) don paan-daj

2 You can work out the answers yourself.

Cycle 33

M-1

Bus	lōt-mée	ລົດເມ
Boat	hýa	ເຮືອ
Airplane	hýa-bin	ເຮືອບິ
Car	lōt	ລົດ
Bicycle	lōt-thîip	ລົດຖີບ
Train	lōt-fáj	ລົດໄຟ
Tricycle	săam-lòວ	ສາມລໍ້

I will go by bus.	khôj si paj nám lōt-mée.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັລົດເມ.
I will go by boat.	khôj si paj nám hýa.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັເຮືອ.
I will go by airplane.	khôj si paj nám hýa-bin.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັເຮືອບິ .
I will go by car.	khôj si paj nám lōt.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັລົດ.
I will go by bicycle.	khôj si paj nám lōt-thîip.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັລົດຖີບ.
I will go by train.	khôj si paj nám lōt-fáj.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັລົດໄຟ.
I will go by tricycle.	khôj si paj nám săam-lòວ.	ຂ້ອຍສິໄປ ັສາມລໍ້.

M-2

With, by	nám	ັ
How	VP + nếew daj?	ແ ວໃດ?

How will you go?	càw si paj nám njăᅇᅇ?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປ ັຫຍັງ?
How will you go?	càw si paj nếew daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປແ ວໃດ?

**C-1**

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| A. How will you go?   | A. càw si paj nám njǎṅ?  |
| B. I will go by (car) | B. khôj si paj nám [lõt] |

**C-2**

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. How will you go?    | A. càw si paj néɛw daj?  |
| B. I will go by (boat) | B. khôj si paj nám [hýa] |

ເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າແລະເຂົ້າໃຈບົດຮຽນນີ້ໄດ້ດີແລ້ວ ທ່ານຈະສອນການໃຊ້ຍານພາຫະນະຢ່າງອື່ນອີກກໍໄດ້. ຈົ່ງໃຊ້ແຕ່ສິ່ງທີ່ນັກຮຽນຮູ້ເຫັນ ແລະທີ່ທ່ານຄິດວ່າຈະເປັນປໂຍດ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາລ້າໆ.

NOTES

- 1) Mode of Transportation may be indicated by nám "(to go) along with" + Type of Vehicle following a verb of motion.

NP + MV + VP (Mode of Transportation)

khôj      si paj      nám lõt-mée

(I              will go      go along with bus)

"I will go by bus."

- 2) The Verb Phrase nám + vehicle may be questioned in either of two ways:

Statement:      khôj si paj nám lõt.      "I'll go by car".

Question 1:      càw si paj nám njǎṅ?      "How will you go?"

Question 2:      càw si paj néɛw daj?      "How will you go?"

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khôj si paj nám lôt-fáj, nám lôt-fáj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) preposition plus noun (d) MV (e) predicate.
2. In the question càw si paj nám njǎŋ, njǎŋ probably refers to (a) person (b) a vehicle (c) a motion (d) a place
3. In the question càw si paj néεw daj, néεw means something like (a) how? (b) manner, way (c) by what means? (d) what (e) none of these.
4. Complete the following sentences:
  - (a) \_\_\_\_\_ si paj nám hýa
  - (b) càw si paj néεw \_\_\_\_\_?
  - (c) láaw si paj \_\_\_\_\_ hýa-bin
  - (d) khǒj si paj nám \_\_\_\_\_ méε
  - (e) càw si paj \_\_\_\_\_ njǎŋ?
5. Translate the following sentences into English:
  - (a) láaw si paj nám lôt-fáj
  - (b) càw máa hóoŋ-hían nám njǎŋ?
  - (c) wée-láa càw si paj hǎan-aa-hǎan, càw si paj nám njǎŋ?
  - (d) phýan càw paj néεw-daj?

---

Answers: 1b, 2b, 3b, 4(a) càw, khôj, etc. (b) daj (c) nám (d) lôt  
(e) nám 5(a) He'll go by train. (b) How did you come to school? (c) When you go to the restaurant, how will you go? (d) How did your friend go?

Cycle 34

M-1

A guide	náaj tháaŋ	າຍທາງ
Return	káp paj/máa	ກັບໄປ/ມາ
His children	lùuk láaw	ລູກລາວ
Consult	pýk-sǎa	ປຶກສາ
Colleagues	phūu-hūam-ŋáan	ຜູ້ຮ່ວມງາ
Live	aa-sǎj jūu	ອາໃສຢູ່
Relatives	phīi-nòວŋ	ພີ່ນ້ອງ

He will go with the guide.	láaw si paj nám náaj tháaŋ.	ລາວສິໄປ ອາຍທາງ.
He will return with the guide.	láaw si káp paj nám náaj tháaŋ.	ລາວສິກັບໄປ ອາຍທາງ.
He will return with his children.	láaw si káp paj nám lùuk láaw.	ລາວສິກັບໄປ ລູກລາວ.
He will consult with his children.	láaw si pýk-sǎa nám lùuk láaw.	ລາວສິປຶກສາ ລູກລາວ.
He will consult with his colleagues.	láaw si pýk-sǎa nám phūu hūam ŋáan láaw.	ລາວສິປຶກສາ ຜູ້ຮ່ວມງາ ລາວ.
He will live with his colleagues.	láaw si aa-sǎj jūu nám phūu hūam ŋáan láaw.	ລາວສິອາໃສຢູ່ ຜູ້ຮ່ວມງາ ລາວ.
He will live with his relatives.	láaw si aa-sǎj jūu nám phīi-nòວŋ láaw.	ລາວສິອາໃສຢູ່ ພີ່ນ້ອງ ລາວ.

**M-2**

Ask permission	khǒw á-nū-njàat	ຂໍອະ ມາດ
Practice	fýk-hát	ຝຶກຫັດ
Cooperate	hūam ḡáan	ຮ່ວມງາ
Apply for a job	sá-mák hēt-kaan	ສັມກເຮັດກາ

With whom is he going to go to practice?	láaw si paj fýk-hát nám phǎj?	ລາວສິໄປຝຶກຫັດ ັໃຜ?
With whom is he going to go to cooperate?	láaw si paj hūam ḡáan nám phǎj?	ລາວສິໄປຮ່ວມງາ ັໃຜ?
To whom is he going to go to apply for the job?	láaw si paj sá-mák hēt-kaan nám phǎj?	ລາວສິໄປສັມກເຮັດກາ ັໃຜ?

**C-1**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. Who are you going to consult with?    | A. càw si paj pýk-sáa nám phǎj?        |
| B. I am going to consult with the guide. | B. khôj si paj pýk-sáa nám náaj tháaḡ. |

**C-2**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Who will come to live with you?                | A. phǎj si máa aa-sǎj jūu nám càw?                 |
| B. My colleague is going to come to live with me. | B. phūu hūam ḡáan khôj si máa aa-sǎj jūu nám khôj. |

**C-3**

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| A. What are you going to do with them? | A. càw si paj hēt njǎḡ nám khá-càw? |
| B. I am going to practice with them.   | B. khôj si paj fýk-hát nám khá-càw. |

NOTES

- 1) When nám is followed by NP in which the N is human, the relationship between the

persons involved may be any one of the following:

(a) Accompaniment:

láaw si káp paj nám lùuk láaw

"He will return with his child."

(b) Joint effort (with participants having equal status).

láaw si pýk-sǎa nám phūu-hūam-ḡáan láaw

"He will consult with his colleagues."

(c) Joint effort (with participants have unequal status).

láaw si paj sá-mák hēt-kaan nám phǎj?

"Who is he going apply to for a job?"

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

- (a) láaw si njāaŋ paj nám nāk-hían
- (b) láaw si khīi lōt nám khōj
- (c) láaw si hían nám náaj-khúu
- (d) láaw si khōo-thòot nám khá-càw
- (e) láaw si paj hǎa paa nám khá-càw
- (f) láaw si wàw nám náaj-khúu
- (g) láaw jūu mǎaŋ-láaw nám phōo láaw
- (h) láaw bōo māk hēt-wiak nám hǎa-nâa láaw
- (i) láaw khōo paj náj mǎaŋ nám khá-càw.
- (j) láaw si bōo pýk-sǎa nám phēn.

---

Answers: 1 (a) He will walk with the students. (b) He will ride with me. (c) He will study with the teacher (or under the teacher.) (d) He will ask their pardon. (e) He will go fishing with them. (f) He will talk with (or to) the teacher. (g) He lives in Laos with his father. (h) He doesn't like to work with his boss. (i) He asked (to be allowed) to go into town with them. (j) He won't consult with him.



Cycle 35

M-1

To walk	njāaŋ	ຍ່າງ
To drive	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
To run	lēen	ແລ່
To ride in a boat	khīi hýa	ຂີ່ເຮືອ
To jump over	tèn khâam	ເຕັ້ນຂ້າມ
To swim	lóoj nàm	ລອຍ ຈ້

I will walk.	khôj si njāaŋ [paj/máa.]	ຂ້ອຍສິຍ່າງ(ໄປ/ມາ).
I will drive (there)	khôj si kháp lōt [máa/paj.]	ຂ້ອຍສິຂັບລົດ(ໄປ/ມາ).
I will run.	khôj si lēen [paj/máa.]	ຂ້ອຍສິແລ່ (ໄປ/ມາ).
I will go by boat.	khôj si khīi hýa [paj-máa.]	ຂ້ອຍສິຂີ່ເຮືອ(ໄປ/ມາ).
I will jump over it.	khôj si tèn khâam [paj/máa.]	ຂ້ອຍສິເຕັ້ນຂ້າມ(ໄປ/ມາ).

M-2

With, by	nám	້າ
How	néew-daj?	ແ ວໃດ?

How will you go?	càw si paj nám njǎŋ?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປ ັາຫຍັງ?
How will you go?	càw si paj néew daj?	ເຈົ້າສິໄປແ ວໃດ?

M-3

Walk	njāaŋ	ຢ່າງ
Ride a horse	khīi màa	ຂີ່ມ້າ
Travel	døen-tháaŋ	ເດີ ທາງ
Exit	ôok	ອອກ

He walked to the country side.      láaw njāaŋ paj bāan-nòok.      ລາວຢ່າງໄປບ້າ ອກ.

He travels to the country side.      láaw døen tháaŋ máa bāan-nòok.      ລາວເດີ ທາງມາ ບ້າ ອກ.

He went (come) out to the country.      láaw ôok paj [máa] bāan-nòok.      ລາວອອກໄປ(ມາ) ບ້າ ອກ.

M-4

Walk	njāaŋ	ຢ່າງ
Eat	kin-khâw	ກິ ເຂົ້າ
Restaurant	hàan aa-hǎan	ຮ້າ ອາຫາ
Drive	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Read	āan nǎŋ-sǔy	ອ່າ ຫ້າງສື
Library	hōwŋ sá-mút	ຫ້ອງສມຸດ
Ride on a bus	khīi lōt-mée	ຂີ່ລົດເມ
Visit	jaam	ຢາມ
House	hýan	ເຮືອ
Run	lēen	ເລ່

I'll walk over to the  
restaurant and eat.

khōj si njāaŋ paj kin  
khâw jūu hàan aa-hǎan.

ຂ້ອຍສີຢ່າງໄປກິ ເຂົ້າຢູ່  
ຮ້າ ອາຫາ .

I'll drive over to  
library and read.

khōj si kháp-lōt paj āan  
nǎŋ-sǔy jūu hōwŋ sá-mút.

ຂ້ອຍສີຂັບລົດໄປອ່າ  
ຢູ່ຫ້ອງສມຸດ.

**M-5**

Drive	kháp-lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Run	lēen	ແລ່

Where is he driving to?	láaw si kháp-lōt paj sǎj?	ລາວສິຂັບລົດໄປໃສ?
Where is he running to?	láaw si lēen paj sǎj?	ລາວສິແລ່ ໄປໃສ?

**C-1**

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. How are you going? | A. càw si paj nám njǎṅ?     |
| B. I'm going by bus.  | B. khôj si paj nám lōt-mée. |

**C-2**

- |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| A. How will she go? | A. láaw si paj néew-daj? |
| B. She will walk.   | B. láaw si njāaṅ paj.    |

**C-3**

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A. Where are you traveling to?        | A. càw si dœn-tháaṅ paj sǎj?        |
| B. I'm traveling to the country side. | B. khôj si dœn-tháaṅ paj bāan-nòok. |

NOTES

- 1) pa.j and máa may occur as the Main Verb in the sentence indicating motion in a particular direction (máa "toward the speaker; pa.j, "away from the speaker");

máa hân-aa-hân "to come to the restaurant"

pa.j kin khâw "to go eat"

pa.j and máa also occur as secondary verbs indicating direction of motion after VP indicating type of locomotion [njāaŋ "to walk", kháp-lôt pa.j/máa must follow VP of this kind:

kháp-lôt pa.j "to drive (some place)"

khīi hýa máa "to come (some place) by boat"

njāaŋ pa.j kin khâw "to walk (some place) to eat"

kháp-lôt pa.j kin-khâw jūu hân-aa-hân "to drive to the restaurant to eat"

- 2) Although pa.j nám njǎŋ and pa.j néεw-đaj both mean "How are (you) going?", there is a little difference in meaning between them. pa.j nám njǎŋ suggests that you are going in some sort of vehicle; where as, pa.j néεw đaj is simply a request as to how you are going from one place to another. The following exchange will illustrate this difference:

Q: càw pa.j nám njǎŋ? "How are you going?"

A: khôj si bōo pa.j nám njǎŋ, "I'm not going in any kind of  
khôj si njāaŋ pa.j vehicle. I'm going to walk."

APPLICATION

1. Add paj or máa and rearrange the following sentence parts into sentences:

- (a) khīi h́ya, h́oŋ sá-mút, āan nǎŋ-sýy
- (b) hàn aa-hǎan, njāaŋ, kin khàw
- (c) pá-théet cīin, dæen tháaŋ
- (d) sǎj, khīi kwian
- (e) jaam ph̄yan, kháp lôt, h́yan
- (f) bàan nòok, ôok
- (g) h́oŋ-hían, lēen
- (h) jūu náj ḿyaŋ, lín, njāaŋ
- (i) pá-súm, khīi lôt-mée, jūu h́oŋ-hían
- (j) jūu sǎj, sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek
- (k) si, njāaŋ, phùn
- (l) ḿyaŋ wíaŋ-can, dæen tháaŋ

---

Answers: Either paj or máa may be used. khôj, càw, láaw, etc. may be used as the subject.

- (a) khôj khīi h́ya paj āan nǎŋ-sýy jūu h́oŋ-sá-mút
- (b) láaw njāaŋ máa kin-khàw jūu hàn aa-hǎan
- (c) càw si dæen-tháaŋ paj pá-théet ciin boo
- (d) láaw si khīi kian paj sǎj
- (e) khôj si kháp-lôt máa jaam ph̄yan khôj jūu h́yan láaw
- (f) khôj si ôok paj bàan-nòok (g) láaw lēen paj h́oŋ-hían
- (h) láaw njāaŋ paj lín jūu náj-ḿyaŋ
- (i) láaw khīi lôt-mée paj pá-súm jūu h́oŋ-hían
- (j) càw si paj sōŋ thóo-lā-lèek jūu sǎj
- (k) láaw si njāaŋ paj phùn
- (l) khôj si dæen-tháaŋ paj ḿyaŋ wíaŋ-can

Cycle 36

M-1

To work	hēt-wiak	ເຮັດວຽກ
Walk	njāaŋ paj	ຢ່າງໄປ
Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
Sleep	nóon	ອ
Ask question	thăam	ຖາມ
Answer	tôop	ຕອບ

Will you be able to work?	càw si hēt-wiak dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິເຮັດວຽກໄດ້ບໍ່?
Will you be able to walk?	càw si njāaŋ paj dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິຢ່າງໄປໄດ້ບໍ່?
Will you be able to buy?	càw si sỳy dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ໄດ້ບໍ່?
Will you be able to sleep?	càw si nóon dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິ ອ ໄດ້ບໍ່?
Will you be able to ask?	càw si thăam dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິຖາມໄດ້ບໍ່?
Will you be able to answer?	càw si tôop dàj boov?	ເຈົ້າສິຕອບໄດ້ບໍ່?

M-2

Yes, (I will be able to...)	dàj.	ໄດ້.
No, (I will not be able to...)	boov dàj.	ບໍ່ໄດ້.

**C-1**

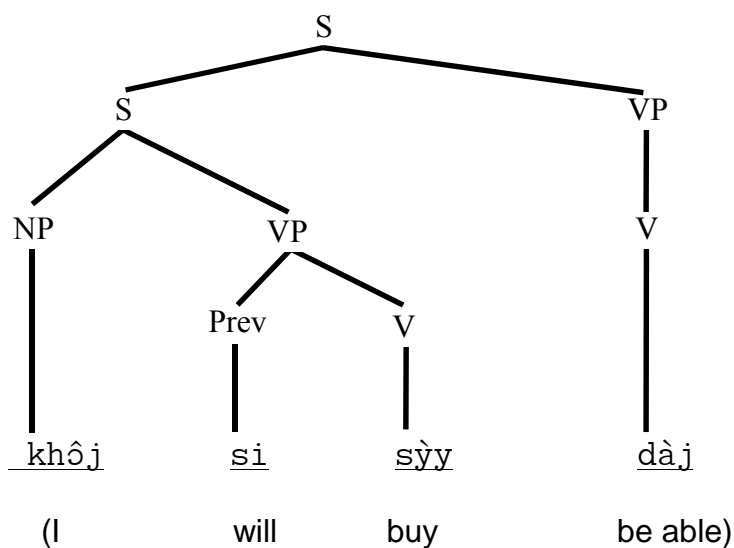
- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A. Will you be able to work? | A. càw si hēt-wiàk dāj bōō? |
| B. Yes.                      | B. dāj.                     |

**C-2**

- |                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. Will you be able to shoot? | A. càw si njíŋ dāj bōō? |
| B. No.                        | B. bōō dāj.             |

NOTES

- 1) dāj means "to be able, possible", and it normally occurs as VP (Predicate) with a Sentence as NP (Subject).



"I will be able to buy it."

- 2) Negation of this type of sentence is: Sentence + bōō dāj:

khôj paj bōō dāj "I can't go."

The question form is: Sentence + dāj bōō? "Can you ....?"

The affirmative response is: dāj "Yes, I can."

The negative response is: bōō dāj "No, I can't."



APPLICATION

- 1) Change the following questions into "possibility" situations.
  - (a) càw si khǎj pá-tuu nìi phìi bōō?
  - (b) càw si át pōōŋ-jìam nìi phìi bōō?
  - (c) càw si sāj ká-cεε lìn-sāk nìi phìi bōō?
  - (d) càw si khǎj ká-cεε hīip nìi phìi bōō?
  - (e) càw si lónŋ khân-daj nìi phìi bōō?
2. Change the following statements into statements indicating one's inability to do something.
  - (a) khôj si khǎj pá-tuu nàn phùn.
  - (b) khôj si pīan jaaŋ nàn phùn.
  - (c) khôj si paj hǎa phūu nàn phùn.
  - (d) khôj si sōōj-lýa phūu nàn phùn.
  - (e) khôj si tít-tōō káp phūu nàn phùn.
- 3) Respond affirmatively to the questions in 1 above.
4. Give negative responses to the questions in 1 above.

---

Answers: 1 Change bōō to dàj bōō 2 Add bōō dàj to the sentence.  
3 The response to all questions is dàj 4 The response to all questions is bōō dàj.

Cycle 37

M-1

Drive	kháp lōt	ຂັບລົດ
Fix a car	pεεη lōt	ແປງລົດ
Speak English	wàw pháa-sǎa aη-kít	ເວົ້າພາສາອັງກິດ
Take picture	thāaj hùup	ຖ່າຍຮູບ

Do you know how to drive?	càw kháp lōt pen bōw?	ເຈົ້າຂັບລົດເປັ ບໍ?
Do you know how to fix a car?	càw pεεη lōt pen bōw?	ເຈົ້າແປງລົດເປັ ບໍ?
Do you know how to speak English?	càw wàw pháa-sǎa aη-kít pen bōw?	ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາອັງກິດເປັ ບໍ?
Do you know how to take pictures?	càw thāaj hùup pen bōw?	ເຈົ້າຖ່າຍຮູບເປັ ບໍ?

C-1

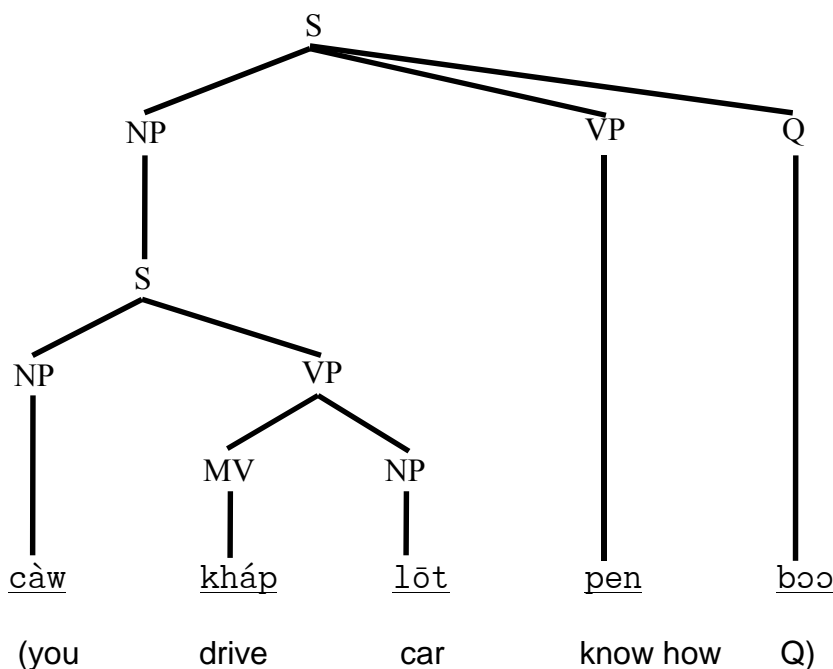
- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. Do you know how to drive? | A. càw kháp lōt pen bōw? |
| B. Yes, I do.                | B. pen.                  |

C-2

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. Do you know how to fix a car? | A. càw pεεη lōt pen bōw? |
| B. No, I don't.                  | B. bōw pen.              |

NOTES

- 1) Compare S + dàj constructions with S + pen constructions



"Do you know how to drive?"

The S + dàj and S + pen structure is identical; the difference arises from the difference in meaning between pen "to know how to perform some activity" and dàj "to be able to do something".

- 2) The affirmative response to S + pen bōō is pen. The negative response is bōō pen. S + pen constructions are negated by putting bōō before pen.
- 3) dàj and pen may be combined with questions as in these examples;

láaw hēt njǎn pen? "What does he know how to do?"

càw sỳy njǎn dàj? "What can you buy?"

APPLICATIONS

- 1) láaw pɛɛŋ lōt bōo pen. This sentence indicates that (a) he doesn't have any tools (b) doesn't know how to fix cars (c) he doesn't want to fix the car (d) he doesn't have a car.
- 2) If someone said, khôj kháp lōt bōo dàj, this might indicate that (a) he doesn't feel like driving (b) he has his right leg in a cast (c) he forgot his driver's license (d) he is ill.
- 3) In the sentence láaw thāaj hūup bōo pen, the subject of the sentence is (a) láaw (b) thāaj hūup (c) láaw thāaj hūup (d) láaw thāaj.
- 4) Which of the sentences below means "I don't know how to shoot a gun"?  
(a) khôj njín pyyn pen (b) khôj bōo njín pyyn pen  
(c) khôj njín pyyn bōo pen (d) khôj njín pyyn pen bōo.
- 5) Change the following sentences to the negative: (a) càw pɛɛŋ lōt pen bōo? (b) khôj wàw pháa-sǎa aŋ-kít pen.
- 6) Answer this question affirmatively: càw pɛɛŋ lōt pen bōo?
- 7) Answer this question negatively: càw thāaj hūup pen bōo?

---

Answers: 1b, 2b, c, or d, 3c, 4c, 5(a) càw pɛɛŋ lōt bōo pen bōo?  
(b) khôj wàw pháa-sǎa aŋ-kít bōo pen 6 pen 7 bōo pen.

Cycle 38

M-1

To type	tii-cák	ຕີຈັກ
To take pictures	sāk-hùup	ຊັກຮູບ
To shop	sỳy khǒວງ	ຊື້ຂອງ
To cut hair	tát-phǒm	ຕັດຜົມ
To build a house	púk hýan	ປຸກເຮືອ
To cook	khúa-kin	ຄົວກິ

Can she type?	láaw tii-cák dàj bວວ?	ລາວຕີຈັກໄດ້ບໍ່?
Can she take pictures?	láaw sāk-hùup dàj bວວ?	ລາວຊັກຮູບໄດ້ບໍ່?
Can she cut hair?	láaw tát-phǒm dàj bວວ?	ລາວຕັດຜົມໄດ້ບໍ່?
Can she cook?	láaw khúa-kin dàj bວວ?	ລາວຄົວກິ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

M-2

Cook	khúa-kin	ຄົວກິ
Build a house	púk-hýan	ປຸກເຮືອ
Cut the hair	tát-phǒm	ຕັດຜົມ
To shop	sỳy khǒoŋ	ຊື້ຂອງ
Take a picture	sāk-hùup	ຊັກຮູບ
Type	tii-cák	ຕີຈັກ

No, because she doesn't know how to cook.

bōo dàj, phō-wāa láaw khúa-kin bōo pen.

ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເພາະວ່າລາວ ຄົວກິ ບໍ່ເປັ .

No, because he doesn't know how to cut hair.

bōo dàj, phō-wāa láaw tát-phǒm bōo pen.

ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເພາະວ່າລາວ ຕັດຜົມບໍ່ເປັ .

No, because he doesn't know to take a picture.

bōo dàj, phō-wāa láaw sāk-hùup bōo pen.

ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເພາະວ່າລາວ ຊັກຮູບບໍ່ເປັ .

No, because he doesn't know to type.

bōo dàj, phō-wāa láaw tii-cák bōo pen.

ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເພາະວ່າລາວ ຕີຈັກບໍ່ເປັ .

**C-1**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A. Can he cook?                         | A. láaw khúa-kin dāj bōō?                  |
| B. No, because he doesn't know to cook. | B. bōō dāj, phō-wāa láaw khúa-kin bōō pen. |

**C-2**

- |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A. What does he know how to do?     | A. láaw hēt njǎṅ pen? |
| B. He knows how to build the house. | B. láaw púk hýan pen. |

NOTES

- 1) phō-wāa "because" is a sentence connective. The sentence that follows phō-wāa stands in causal relationship to the one that precedes it.

Sentence 1: láaw khúa-kin bōō dāj

Sentence 2: láaw khúa-kin bōō pen

S 1 + S 2: láaw khúa-kin bōō dāj phō-wāa [láaw khúa-kin] bōō pen

"She can't cook because she doesn't know how (to cook)."

- 2) The difference in meaning between S + dāj "to be in a position or situation to do something" and S + pen "to know how to do something" may be illustrated in sentences like this one:

(láaw sāk-hùup] bōō dāj phō-wāa láaw sāk-hùup bōō pen

"He is unable to (take a picture) because he doesn't know how to take a picture".

However, there are situations in which pen and dāj may be interchanged, as follows:

càw wàw pháa-sǎa aṅ-kít bōō pen / dāj "You can't speak English."

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) bōo dàj, phō-wāa láaw tát-phǒm \_\_\_\_\_

(b) bōo \_\_\_\_\_, phō-wāa láaw sāk-hùup bōo pen.

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

(a) khôj si paj nám lôt-thîip \_\_\_\_\_ khôj bōo míi lôt

(b) khôj si njāaŋ paj \_\_\_\_\_ khôj kháp-lôt bōo pen

(c) khôj si khīi hýa paj \_\_\_\_\_ khôj njāaŋ paj bōo dàj

3. Fill in the blanks with pen or dàj as indicated. If either is possible, put in both.

(a) khôj paj nám hýa bōo \_\_\_\_\_

(b) láaw njāaŋ paj \_\_\_\_\_

(c) láaw hēt njǎŋ \_\_\_\_\_

(d) càw sāk-hùup \_\_\_\_\_ bōo?

(e) láaw tii-cák bōo \_\_\_\_\_

---

Answers: 1(a) bōo pen (b) dàj 2a, b and c: phō-wāa 3(a) dàj (b) dàj  
(c) dàj/pen (d) dàj/pen (e) dàj/pen



Cycle 39

M-1

Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
See	hě̃n	ເຫັນ
Have	míi	ມີ
Sell	khǎaj	ຂາຍ
Get	dàj	ໄດ້
Raise	liàn	ລ້ຽງ

How many horses did you buy?	càw sỳy màa cák too?	ເຈົ້າຊື້ມ້າຈັກໂຕ?
How many horses did you see?	càw hě̃n màa cák too?	ເຈົ້າເຫັນ ມ້າຈັກໂຕ?
How many horses did you have?	càw míi màa cák too?	ເຈົ້າມີມ້າຈັກໂຕ?
How many horses did you raise?	càw liàn màa cák too?	ເຈົ້າລ້ຽງມ້າຈັກໂຕ?

M-2

Book	pỳm	ປຶ້ມ
Carpenter	sāaŋ-màj	ຊ່າງໄມ້
Dog	mǎa	ຫມາ
Orange	mâak-kìaaŋ	ຫມາກກຽງ
Fish	paa	ປາ
Picture	hùup	ຮູບ
Money, kip	ŋón, kíp	ເງິ , ກີບ

I see two books.	khôj hěn pỳm sǒvŋ hũa.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນປຶ້ມສອງຫົວ.
I see two carpenters.	khôj hěn sāaŋ-màj sǒvŋ khón.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ຊ່າງໄມ້ສອງຄົ .
I see two dogs.	khôj hěn mǎa sǒvŋ too.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ຫມາສອງໂຕ.
I see two oranges.	khôj hěn mâak-kìaaŋ sǒvŋ nũaj.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ຫມາກກຽງສອງຫ 'ວຍ.
I see two fish.	khôj hěn paa sǒvŋ too.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ປາສອງໂຕ.
I see two pictures.	khôj hěn hùup sǒvŋ phēen.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ຮູບສອງແຜ່ .
I see two kips.	khôj hěn ŋón sǒvŋ kíp.	ຂ້ອຍເຫັນ ເງິ ສອງກີບ.

C-1

- |                               |                         |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. How many fish did you buy? | A. càw sỳy paa cák too? |
| B. Three.                     | B. sǎam too.            |

C-2

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| A. What do you see?          | A. càw hěn njǎŋ?        |
| B. I see some dogs.          | B. khôj hěn mǎa.        |
| A. How many dogs do you see? | A. càw hěn mǎa cák too? |
| B. Four.                     | B. sīi too.             |

NOTES

- 1) When dàj is the Main Verb in a Sentence and is followed by NP (object), it has the meaning "to get, earn, procure".

khôj dàj pỳm 2 hũa "I procured 2 books."

- 2) liàŋ means "to look after, raise". It may occur only with animate NP as objects.

liàŋ lùuk "to raise" or "to take care of children"

liàŋ màa "to raise horses"

liàŋ sát "to raise animals"

- 3) sāaŋ means "artisan, skilled craftsman". màj means "wood". sāaŋ màj is used to refer to a "person who is skilled in working with wood", hence it includes carpenters, cabinet makers, coffin makers, etc...

NO APPLICATION PHASE

Cycle 40

M-1

Table	to'	ໂຕະ
Animal	sát	ສັດ
Book	pým	ປຶ້ມ
House	hýan	ເຮືອ
Car	lõt	ລົດ
Interpreter	náaj pháa-sǎa	າຍພາສາ
Horse	màa	ມ້າ

This table.	to' nūaj nìi.	ໂຕະຫນ່ວຍນີ້.
This animal.	sát too nìi.	ສັດໂຕນີ້.
This book.	pým hǔa nìi.	ປຶ້ມຫົວນີ້.
This house.	hýan lǎj nìi.	ເຮືອນຫລັງນີ້.
This car.	lõt khán nìi.	ລົດຄັນນີ້.
This interpreter.	náaj pháa-sǎa phūu nìi.	ນາຍພາສາຜູ້ນີ້.
This horse.	màa too nìi.	ມ້າໂຕນີ້.

M-2

This table	tó' nūaj nìi	ໂຕະໜ່ວຍນີ້
This camera	kòoŋ-thāaj-hùup nūaj nìi	ກ້ອງຖ່າຍຮູບໜ່ວຍນີ້
This flashlight	fáj-sǎaj an nìi	ໄຟສາຍອັນນີ້
This watch	móoŋ nūaj nìi	ໂມງໜ່ວຍນີ້
This gun	pyyn ká-bôok nìi	ປືນກະບອກນີ້
This shirt	sýa phýyn nìi	ເສື້ອຜົນນີ້
This hat	múak baj nìi	ໝວກໜ່ວຍນີ້

This table costs 500,000 kips.	tó' nūaj nìi láa-kháa hòoj phán kīip.	ໂຕະໜ່ວຍນີ້ລາຄາທ້າ ຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This camera costs 500,000 kips.	kòoŋ thāaj hòup nūaj nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ກ້ອງຖ່າຍຮູບໜ່ວຍນີ້ ລາຄາທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This flashlight costs 500,000 kips.	fáj sǎaj an nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ໄຟສາຍອັນນີ້ລາຄາ ທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This watch costs 500,000 kips.	móoŋ nūaj nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ໂມງໜ່ວຍນີ້ລາຄາ ທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This gun costs 500,000 kips.	pyyn ká-bôok nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ປືນກະບອກນີ້ລາຄາ ທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This shirt costs 500,000 kips.	sýa phýyn nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ເສື້ອຜົນນີ້ລາຄາ ທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.
This hat costs 500,000 kips.	múak baj nìi láa-kháa háa hòoj kīip.	ໝວກໜ່ວຍນີ້ລາຄາ ທ້າຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ.

M-3

This pair of glasses	wēen-taa khūu nìi	ແວ່ນຕາຄູ່ນີ້
This pair of socks	thǒng-thàw khūu nìi	ຖົງເທົ້າຄູ່ນີ້
This pack of cigarettes	jaa-sūup sǒwng nìi	ຢາສູບຊອງນີ້
This box of matches	káp-fáj káp nìi	ກັບໄຟກັບນີ້
This knife	mìit duang nìi	ມີດດວງນີ້
This briefcase	ká-paw nūaj nìi	ກະເປົາຫນ່ວຍນີ້

How much does this pair of glasses cost?	wēen-taa khūu nìi lǎa-kháa thāw daj?	ແວ່ນຕາຄູ່ນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?
How much does this pair of socks cost?	thǒng-thàw khūu nìi lǎa-kháa thāw daj?	ຖົງເທົ້າຄູ່ນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?
How much does this pack of cigarettes cost?	jaa-sūup sǒwng nìi lǎa-kháa thāw daj?	ຢາສູບຊອງນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?
How much does this box of matches cost?	káp fáj-káp nìi lǎa-kháa thāw daj?	ກັບໄຟກັບນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?
How much does this knife cost?	mìit duang nìi lǎa-kháa hāw daj?	ມີດດວງນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?
How much does this briefcase cost?	ká-paw nūaj nìi lǎa-kháa thāw daj?	ກະເປົາຫນ່ວຍນີ້ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

**M-4**

Book (classifier)	pỳm, hũa	ປຶ້ມ, ຫົວ
Meat, kilo	sìin, kii-lóo	ຊີ້ນ, ກິໂລ
Crab (classifier)	ká-puu, too	ກະບູ, ໂຕ
Tomato (classifier)	mâak-lēn, nūaj	ຫມາກເລັ່ນ, ຫນ່ວຍ
Watch, clock (classifier)	móoᅇ, nūaj	ໂມງ, ຫ 'ວຍ

How many kips do these books cost apiece?	pỳm nìi càw khǎaj hũa lā' cák kīip?	ປຶ້ມນີ້ເຈົ້າຂາຍຫົວລະຈັກກີບ?
How many kips does this meat cost per kilo?	sìin nìi càw khǎaj kii-lóo lā' cák kīip?	ຊີ້ນນີ້ເຈົ້າຂາຍກິໂລລະຈັກກີບ?
How many kips do these crabs cost each?	ká-puu nìi càw khǎaj too lā' cák kīip	ກະບູນີ້ເຈົ້າຂາຍໂຕລະຈັກກີບ?
How many kips do these tomatoes cost apiece?	mâak-lēn nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lā' cák kiip?	ຫມາກເລັ່ນນີ້ເຈົ້າຂາຍຫ 'ວຍລະຈັກກີບ?
How many kips do these watches cost apiece?	móoᅇ nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lā' cák kīip?	ໂມງນີ້ເຈົ້າຂາຍຫ 'ວຍລະຈັກກີບ?

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

**M-5**

Fifty thousand kips	hâa-síp phán kîip	ຫ້າສິບພັນ ກີບ
320,000 kips	săam lòoĵ sáaw phán kîip	ສາມຮ້ອຍພັນ ກີບ
Seventeen cents	síp-cét sén	ສິບເຈັດເຊັ
Twenty-eight thousand kips	sáaw-pêet phán kîip	ຊາວແປດພັນ ກີບ

Fifty thousand kips each.	hũa lâ' hâa-síp phán kîip.	ຫົວລະຫ້າສິບພັນ ກີບ.
320,000 kips per kilo.	kii-lóo lâ' sảam lòoĵ sảaw phán kîip.	ກິໂລລະສາມຮ້ອຍຊາວພັນ ກີບ.
Seventeen cents each.	too lâ' síp cét sén.	ໂຕລະສິບເຈັດເຊັ .
Twenty-eight thousand kips a piece.	nủaj lâ' sảaw-pêet phán kîip.	ຫ້ວຍລະຊາວແປດພັນ ກີບ.

**M-6**

Take	aw	ເອົາ
Give	aw hâj	ເອົາໃຫ້

O.K., take it!	ee, aw sảa!	ເອີ, ເອົາສາ!
O.K., go ahead!	ee, paj sảa!	ເອີ, ໄປສາ!
O.K., give it to him!	ee, aw hâj láaw sảa!	ເອີ, ເອົາໃຫ້ລາວສາ!
O.K., eat it!	ee, kin sảa!	ເອີ, ກິ ສາ!

**C-1**

- |                          |                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. How much is this gun? | A. pyn ká-bôok nủi láa-khảa thảw daj? |
| B. Twelve thousand kips. | B. síp sỏoĵ phán kîip.                |



**C-2**

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| A. What's this?              | A. an nìi mēen njǎŋ?                   |
| B. It's a knife.             | B. an nìi mēen mīit.                   |
| A. How much is this knife?   | A. mīit duaŋ nìi láa-kháa<br>thāw daj? |
| B. Forty-five thousand kips. | B. sīi síp hāa phán kīip.              |

**C-3**

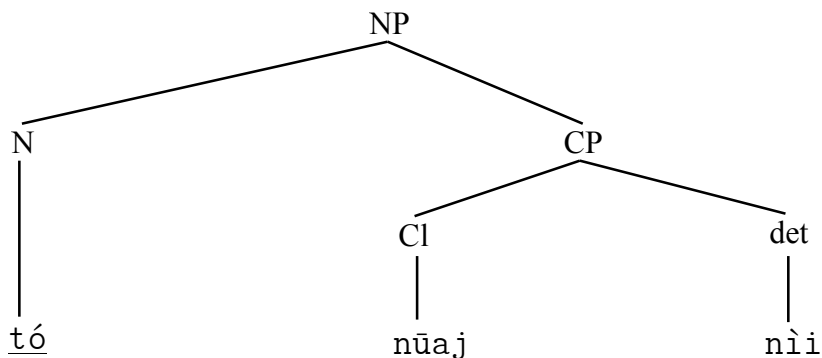
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. How much do these chickens cost apiece? | A. kāj nìi láa-kháa too lā'<br>thāw daj? |
| B. They are 53,000 kips each.              | B. too lā' sām síp hāa phán<br>kīip.     |

**C-4**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A. How many kips does this meat cost per kilo? | A. sīin nìi càw khǎaj kii-lóo lā'<br>cák kīip?               |
| B. It's 28,000 kips per kilo.                  | B. kii-lóo lā' sáaw-pēet<br>phán kīip.                       |
| A. Can you make it 27,000 kips?                | A. sáaw-cét phán kīip dàj bōo?                               |
| B. No, I can't. Take it for 275 kips.          | B. bōo, bōo dàj. aw sǒoŋ sáaw-cét<br>phán hāa hòoj kīip sǎa. |
| A. Please give me two kilos.                   | A. əə, aw hāj khôj sǒoŋ kii-lóo<br>dēε.                      |

**NOTES**

- 1) The following NP contains a CP (classifier phrase) ;



The classifier phrase marks the count noun as definite singular:

tó' nūaj nìi      "this table"

tó'      nìi      "these tables"

Some additional unit classifiers and their noun co-occurents are given:

<u>Unit Classifier</u>		<u>Noun</u>	
too	"body"	sát	"animal"
		kāj	"chicken"
an	"object" (It can be used for most objects.)	fáj-sǎaj	"flashlight"
baj	"sheet like"	mûak	"hat"
duaŋ	"something shiny"	mìit	"knife"
ká-bôok	"barrel"	pyyn	"gun"
khūu	"objects in pairs"	wēen-taa	"eye glasses"
		thǒŋ-thàw	"socks"
lǎŋ	"back"	hýan	"house"

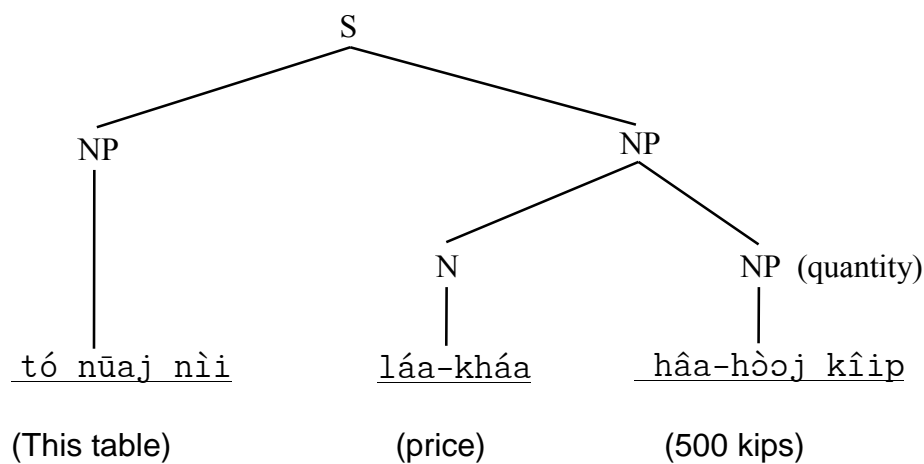
**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

With mass nouns (sìin "meat", nàm "water, etc.) metric rather than unit classifiers are used:

<u>Metric Classifier</u>		<u>Noun</u>	
kii-lóo	(either 1000 meters or 1000 grams)	sìin	"meat"
káp	"small box"	káp-fáj	"matches"
sóoŋ	"small package"	jaa-sûup	"cigarettes"
kîip	"kip (Laotian unit of currency)"		

2) When asking or giving the price of something lâa-kháa is used in a verb less sentence:



"This table costs 500 kips."

In the question NP (quantity) is replaced by thāw-daj.

mìit duan nìi lâa-kháa thāw-daj? "How much is this knife?"

APPLICATION

1) Fill in the blanks using English as a guide:

- |     |                               |                                   |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (a) | ká-puu _____                  | "these crabs"                     |
| (b) | sìin _____                    | "this meat"                       |
| (c) | wēen-taa _____                | "this pair of glasses"            |
| (d) | màa _____                     | "this horse"                      |
| (e) | kòon-thāaj-hùup _____         | "this camera"                     |
| (f) | móon _____                    | "these watches"                   |
| (g) | _____ nūaj nìi                | "this briefcase, bag"             |
| (h) | māak-lēn _____                | "these tomatoes"                  |
| (i) | māak-lēn _____                | "this tomato"                     |
| (j) | kii-lóo _____ 320,000 kîip    | "320,000 kips per kilo"           |
| (k) | _____ lā' 4,000,000 kîip      | "4,000,000 kips each (watches)"   |
| (l) | pým nìi _____ lā' 15,000 kîip | "15,000 kips a piece (books)"     |
| (m) | kāj nìi _____ cák kîip        | "how much a piece?"               |
| (n) | baj lā' 30,000 _____          | "30,000 kips apiece"              |
| (o) | mìit duan nìi _____           | "What's the price of this knife?" |

---

Answers: 1 (a) nìi (b) nìi (c) khūu-nìi (d) too nìi (e) nūaj nìi (f) nìi (g) ká-paw (h) nìi (i) nūaj nìi (j) lā' (k) nūaj (l) hǔa (m) too lā' (n) kîip (o) lāa-kháa thāw-daj?

Cycle 41

M-1

Buy anything?	sỳy njǎṅ bɔɔ?	ຊື້ຫຍັງບໍ່?
Go anywhere?	paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ໄປໃສບໍ່?
Going with anybody?	paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?	ໄປ ອຳໃຜບໍ່?
To stay in any hotel?	phāk jūu hóoṅ-héem daj bɔɔ?	ພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມໃດບໍ່?

Did he buy anything?	láaw sỳy njǎṅ bɔɔ?	ລາວຊື້ຫຍັງບໍ່?
Did he go anywhere?	láaw paj sǎj bɔɔ?	ລາວໄປໃສບໍ່?
Is he going with anybody?	láaw si paj nám phǎj?	ລາວສິໄປ ອຳໃຜ?
Is he going to stay in a hotel?	láaw si phāk jūu hóoṅ-héem daj bɔɔ?	ລາວສິພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມບໍ່?

M-2

Yes, he will buy one chicken.	sỳy, láaw si sỳy kāj too nỳṅ.	ຊື້, ລາວສິຊື້ໄກ່ໂຕນຶ່ງ.
Yes, he is going to see the doctor.	paj, láaw si paj hǎa mɔɔ.	ໄປ, ລາວສິໄປຫາໝໍ.
Yes, he is going with his older brother.	paj, láaw si paj nám àaj láaw.	ໄປ, ລາວສິໄປ ອ້າຍລາວ.
Yes, he will stay in a new hotel.	phāk, láaw si phāk jūu hóoṅ-héem māj.	ພັກ, ລາວສິພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມໃໝ່.

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

---

**M-3**

Mango (classifier)	mâak-mūaŋ [nūaj]	ຫມາກມ່ວງ (ຫ 'ວຍ)
Banana (classifier)	mâak-kùaj [nūaj]	ຫມາກກ້ວຍ (ຫ 'ວຍ)
Vegetable, bunch	phák, māt	ຜັກ, ມັດ
Hot pepper, pack	mâak-phét, hōw	ຫມາກເຜັດ, ຫໍ່
Fish sauce, bottle	nàm-paa, kèew	ຮ້ຳປາ, ແກ້ວ

Are you going to buy any mangoes?	càw si sỳy mâak-mūaŋ cák nūaj bōw?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ຫມາກມ່ວງຈັກ ຫ 'ວຍບໍ່?
Are you going to buy any bananas?	càw si sỳy mâak-kùaj cák nūaj bōw?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ຫມາກກ້ວຍ ຈັກຫ 'ວຍບໍ່?
Are you going to buy any bunches of vegetable?	càw si sỳy phák cák māt bōw?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ຜັກຈັກມັດບໍ່?
Are you going to buy any packages of hot pepper?	càw si sỳy mâak-phét cák hōw bōw?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ຫມາກເຜັດ ຈັກຫໍ່ບໍ່?
Are you going to buy any fish sauce?	càw si sỳy nàm-paa cák kèew bōw?	ເຈົ້າສິຊື້ນ້ຳປາຈັກ ແກ້ວບໍ່?

M-4

I'm not going to read any books.	khôj si bōo āan p̄ym cák h̄ua.	ຂ້ອຍສິບໍ່ອ່ານປຶ້ມຈັກຫົວ.
I'm not going to buy any chickens.	khôj si bōo s̄ȳy k̄āj cák too.	ຂ້ອຍສິບໍ່ຊື້ໄກ່ຈັກໂຕ.
I'm not going to buy any bananas.	khôj si bōo s̄ȳy m̄āak-k̄ùaj cák n̄ūaj.	ຂ້ອຍສິບໍ່ຊື້ຫມາກກ້ວຍຈັກຫ ' ວຍ.
I'm not going to teach anybody.	khôj si bōo s̄w̄on cák khón.	ຂ້ອຍສິບໍ່ສອ ຈັກຄື .
I didn't have any money (Kips).	khôj bōo míi ṇén cák k̄īp.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີເງິ ຈັກກີບ.
I do not know anybody.	khôj bōo h̄u-u-cák cák khón.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກໆຄື .

LAO BASIC COURSE

M-5

Where	sǎj	ໃສ
Buy	sỳy	ຊື້
With	nám	້າ
Have money	míi ງ່ອນ	ມີເງິນ
Know	hùu-cák	ຮູ້ຈັກ
To want to get	jâak dàj	ຢາກໄດ້
To stay	phāk	ພັກ
To ask (question)	thăam	ຖາມ

I didn't go anywhere.	khôj bōw paj sǎj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄປໃສ.
I didn't buy anything.	khôj bōw sỳy njǎṅ.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຊື້ຫຍັງ.
I didn't go with anybody.	khôj bōw paj nám phǎj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄປ້າໃຜ.
I don't know anybody.	khôj bōw hùu-cák phūu daj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກຜູ້ໃດ.
I don't know what day.	khôj bōw hùu wāa mỳy daj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ວ່າມີ້ໃດ.
I don't know what he wants.	khôj bōw hùu wāa láaw jâak dàj njǎṅ.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ວ່າລາວ ຢາກໄດ້ຫຍັງ.
I don't know where he's staying.	khôj bōw hùu wāa láaw phāk jūu sǎj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ຮູ້ວ່າລາວ ພັກຢູ່ໃສ.
I didn't ask anybody at all.	khôj bōw dàj thăam phūu daj.	ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ຖາມຜູ້ໃດ.



**C-1**

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. Will you buy anything?     | A. càw si sỳy njǎŋ bōō?           |
| B. Yes, I will buy two books. | B. sỳy, khôj si sỳy pỳm sǒōŋ hũa. |

**C-2**

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A. Are you going to buy any fish?     | A. càw si sỳy paa cák too bōō?       |
| B. No, I'm not going to buy any fish. | B. bōō, khôj si bōō sỳy paa cák too. |

**C-3**

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. Are you going with anybody?     | A. càw si paj nám phǎj bōō?       |
| B. No, I'm not going with anybody. | B. bōō, khôj si bōō paj nám phǎj? |

NOTES

- 1) mâak means "fruit of a tree or plant", and is the first element in many Noun Compounds referring to fruits and vegetables, mâak-mūaŋ "mango", mâak-kùaj "banana", mâak-kìaŋ "orange", mâak-phét "hot peppers". The general word for fruit is mâak-màj however, mâak does occur with this meaning in

tòn-màj nìi bōō pen mâak "This tree has no fruit on it".

- 2) māt means literally "to tie up". It is used to mean "bunch, or bundle" of vegetables, etc.

- 3) hōō "to wrap up" is used to refer to "packages, packets, etc" or things that are wrapped in paper. It does not refer to boxes.

- 4) kèew means "glass as a material". It is also used to refer to "glass bottles". The word for a "glass to drink out of" is côok. côok kèew is a "glass drinking glass".

- 5) njǎŋ, sǎj, and phǎj usually function as question words in sentences:

càw si paj sǎj? "Where are you going?"

láaw si khǎaj njǎŋ? "What is he going to sell?"

càw si deen-tháaŋ nám phǎj? "Who are you going to travel with?"

But in negative sentence or in question with bōo, they function as indefinite nouns:

láaw sỳy njǎŋ bōo? "Did he buy anything?"

láaw paj sǎj bōo? "Did he go anywhere?"

càw bōo paj nám phǎj bōo? "You didn't go with anybody"

cák "How many?" functions as a question word in

càw míi pỳm cák hǔa? "How many books do you have?"

but in the negative sentence khôj bōo míi cák hǔa "I don't have a single one (book)", cák means "any" or "a single one". daj "any" has a similar meaning in the affirmative question.

láaw si phāk jūu hóoŋ-héem daj bōo? "Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?"

bōo, láaw si bōo phāk jūu hóoŋ-héem daj "No, he isn't going to stay in any hotel."

cák and daj are both used in the negative for emphasis. In cases where either cák and/or daj can be used daj is usually more general in meaning. Compare:

khôj bōo hùu-cák cák khón "I don't know anybody (in this group)."

khôj bōo hùu-cák phūu daj "I don't know anybody (in this town.)"

APPLICATION

- 1) Translate the following sentences into Lao: (Write the answers on a separate piece of paper or say them aloud and check your answers).
- (a) What do you see? I don't see anything.
  - (b) Where did your friend go? He didn't go anywhere.
  - (c) Do you have any money? No, I don't have a single kip.
  - (d) Do you know anybody in Vientiane? No, I don't know a soul there.

---

Answers: 1 (a) càw hěn njǎŋ? khôj bōo hěn njǎŋ  
(b) ph̄yan càw paj sǎj? láaw bōo paj sǎj  
(c) càw míi nén bōo? bōo, khôj bōo míi nén cák kîip  
(d) càw hùu-cák phūu daj jūu wíaaŋ-can bōo?  
bōo, khôj bōo hùu-cák phūu daj jūu hân cák khón.

Cycle 42

M-1

To know her	hùu-cák káp láaw	ຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວ
To go see	paj bəŋ	ໄປເບິ່ງ
To taste	sím	ຊົມ
To buy	sỳy	ຊື້
To ride	khīi	ຂີ່
To read	āan	ອ່າ

Everybody wants to know her. phǎj phǎj koo jâak hùu-cák káp láaw. ໃຜໆກໍຢາກຮູ້ຈັກກັບລາວ.

Everybody wants to go see. phǎj phǎj koo jâak paj bəŋ. ໃຜໆກໍຢາກໄປເບິ່ງ.

Everybody wants to taste. phǎj phǎj koo jâak sím. ໃຜໆກໍຢາກຊົມ.

Everybody wants to buy. phǎj phǎj koo jâak sỳy. ໃຜໆກໍຢາກຊື້.

Everybody wants to ride. phǎj phǎj koo jâak khīi. ໃຜໆກໍຢາກຂີ່.

Everybody wants to read. phǎj phǎj koo jâak āan ໃຜໆກໍຢາກອ່າ .

**LAO BASIC COURSE**

**M-2**

She, pretty	láaw, ɲáam	ລາວ, ງາມ
The film, good	nǎɲ, mūan	ຫ້າງ, ມ່ວ
The food, delicious	aa-hǎan, sèɛp	ອາຫານ, ແຊບ
Thing, cheap	khǒɔɲ, thýyk	ຂອງ, ຖືກ
The car, new	lōt, māj	ລົດ, ໃໝ່
This book, interesting	pým nìi, nâa-sǒn-caj	ປຶ້ມນີ້, ຫນ້າສົນໃຈ

She is very pretty.	láaw ɲáam lǎaj.	ລາວງາມຫລາຍ.
The film is very good.	nǎɲ mūan lǎaj.	ຫ້າງມ່ວ ຫລາຍ.
The food is very delicious.	aa-hǎan sèɛp lǎaj.	ອາຫານ ແຊບຫລາຍ.
Thing are very cheap.	khǒɔɲ thýyk lǎaj.	ຂອງຖືກຫລາຍ.
The car is very new.	lōt māj lǎaj.	ລົດໃໝ່ຫລາຍ.
This book is very interesting.	pým nìi nâa-sǒn-caj lǎaj.	ປຶ້ມນີ້ຫນ້າສົນໃຈຫລາຍ.

**C-1**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. Is she pretty?   | A. láaw ɲáam boɔ?   |
| B. Oh yes, she is very pretty. Everybody wants to know her. | B. oo, láaw ɲáam lǎaj, phǎj phǎj koo jâak hùu-cák káp láaw. |

**C-2**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A. Why does everybody want to know her?                    | A. pen nǎɲ phǎj phǎj koo cýɲ jâak hùu-cák káp láaw.             |
| B. Everybody wants to know her because she is very pretty. | B. phǎj phǎj koo jâak hùu-cák káp láaw phō -wāa láaw ɲáam lǎaj. |

NOTES

1) Doubling of phǎj "who, anyone" gives it the general and all-inclusive meaning "everybody". It is normally followed by koo, which in this case cannot be translated.

2) jâak "want, would like" is normally followed by VP: láaw jâak paj bēn nǎn "He wants to go to a movie." jâak should not be confused with māk "like to":

láaw māk paj bēn nǎn "He likes to go to movies."

3) lǎaj "very" is an intensifier when it occurs after stative verbs like ḡám "pretty", etc.

4) mūan "to be enjoyable, to be fun" may have inanimate NP or VP as Subject:

pen thā-hǎan mūan boo? "Is it fun being a soldier?"

síi-née mūan boo? "Did you enjoy the movie?"

5) The construction pen-njǎn (NP) cýn VP "Why...(how is it that...)"

pen-njǎn láaw cýn jâak paj "Why (how is it that...) does he

pá-cam jūu pá-thèet láaw? want to be stationed in Laos?"

6) nâa-sǒn-caj "interesting" functions like a stative verb, but it is a compound made up of nâa + VP "to be able" or "ing" + sǒn-caj "to be interested in". nâa may occur before other verbs with a similar function: nâa-kin "looks good to eat".  
nâa-jūu "looks nice to live in", etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

- (a) \_\_\_\_\_ koo huu lèew  
(Everybody already knows that.)
- (b) hían pháa-sǎa \_\_\_\_\_ boo?  
(Is studying a language fun?)
- (c) lōt càw \_\_\_\_\_ boo?  
(Is your car new?)
- (d) aa-hǎan láaw \_\_\_\_\_ boo?  
(Is Lao food delicious?)
- (e) láaw \_\_\_\_\_ lǎaj boo?  
(Is she very short in height?)
- (f) khôj bōo jâak \_\_\_\_\_  
(I don't want to be sick.)
- (g) khôj bōo \_\_\_\_\_ màa cōoj  
(I don't like skinny horses.)
- (h) khón náj mýaη māk \_\_\_\_\_ bàn-nòok  
(City folks like to make pleasure trips to the countryside.)
- (i) \_\_\_\_\_ càw \_\_\_\_\_ hían pháa-sǎa láaw?  
(How do you happen to be studying Lao?)
- (j) \_\_\_\_\_ mūan lǎaj  
(Flying (going by plane) is a lot of fun.)
- (k) bōo \_\_\_\_\_ māk kháp-lōt  
(Nobody likes to drive a car.)
- (l) pỳm hǔa nàn bōo nâa \_\_\_\_\_ paan-daj.  
(That book isn't very interesting.)

---

Answers: 1 (a) phǎj phǎj (b) mūan (c) māj (d) sèep (e) tām  
(f) bōo sá-baaj (g) māk (h) paj thīaw (i) pen njǎη / cýη  
(j) paj nám hýa-bin (k) míi phǎj (l) sǒn-caj